



October 8, 2015

Memorandum

To: Members of the Board

From: Ross Simms, Assistant Director

Through: Wendy M. Payne, Executive Director

Subj: Reporting Model – **TAB A**<sup>1</sup>

### **MEETING OBJECTIVE**

The objective is to discuss a revised draft ideal reporting model concepts statement.

### **BRIEFING MATERIALS**

This memo provides background and discusses matters for Board consideration and the following attachments:

Attachment I: Reporting Model Draft Concepts, presents the revised draft concepts.  
Attachment II: Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts (SFFAC) 1, *Objectives of Federal Financial Reporting* presents existing conceptual guidance that is also discussed in the revised draft concept statement.  
Attachment III: SFFAC 3, *Management's Discussion and Analysis* presents existing conceptual guidance regarding management's discussion and analysis. The revised draft suggests additional concepts that are not explicit in the concepts statement.  
Attachment IV: Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Standards (SFFAS) 4, *Managerial Cost Accounting Standards and Concepts* presents existing conceptual guidance regarding cost accounting. The revised draft includes a discussion on cost accounting which is similar to the concepts discussed in SFFAS 4.

---

<sup>1</sup> The staff prepares Board meeting materials to facilitate discussion of issues at the Board meeting. This material is presented for discussion purposes only; it is not intended to reflect authoritative views of the FASAB or its staff. Official positions of the FASAB are determined only after extensive due process and deliberations

## **BACKGROUND**

During the August 2015 meeting, the Board discussed a draft ideal reporting model concepts statement and agreed to include several enhancements. The Board acknowledged that the draft repeats guidance from earlier concepts statements, and should do so. They also agreed that it should include introductory statements discussing what the Board intends to accomplish and how the concepts presented relate to the Board's earlier conceptual guidance. Also, the Board discussed the issues that the concepts statement should include regarding performance and cost information, primarily the timing differences in reporting performance, budgetary, and financial information.

In addition, the Board appeared to support the idea of clarifying FASAB's role in relation to the objectives of financial reporting. The concepts statement should include a discussion regarding the reporting objectives for which the Board, as a GAAP standards-setter, might have a direct versus supportive role. Board members also agreed that the concepts statement should include a diagram or picture depicting the relationship between financial reports, including financial statements, disclosures, and required supplementary information, and other financial reporting sources. However, the Board determined that it is not necessary to add illustrative financial statements to the concepts statement and will pursue issuing an exposure draft concepts statement before the December 2015 meeting, assuming that it fully addresses all the concepts the Board has identified for inclusion.

## **MEMBER FEEDBACK**

If you have any questions or comments, please contact me by telephone at (202) 512-2512 or by email at [simmsr@fasab.gov](mailto:simmsr@fasab.gov) with a cc to [paynew@fasab.gov](mailto:paynew@fasab.gov) .

## QUESTIONS FOR THE BOARD

### 1. Whether to Focus on New Concepts

The draft concepts statement may need to focus on new concepts. During the February 2015 meeting, the Board developed an outline for the ideal reporting model concepts statement. This new statement would be part of the series of concepts statements and Board members provided aspirational statements that should be discussed. The resulting outline repeated many of the concepts and topics already discussed in the existing series of concepts statements and, in April 2015, the Board reviewed the repetitions and affirmed that they should be discussed in the new statement.

However, repeating existing guidance could confuse the reporting community and future Board members. The Board's practice is to amend or rescind guidance by proposing changes in an exposure draft. The exposure draft would: present the full text of the existing statement; and use strikethroughs to indicate the text being deleted and underlines to indicate text being added. This approach helps readers to review and understand the impact of proposed changes.

The draft ideal reporting model statement has evolved since the Board developed the outline. It includes discussions similar to those in existing concepts and appears to codify or update existing concepts without explaining the reason for changes or providing the full context of the original concepts. Consequently, the ideal reporting model statement may confuse readers regarding: whether and, if so, which text is intended to supersede similar portions of existing concepts statements; and what new concepts are being introduced.

**Recommendation:** Focus the purpose of the concepts statement on new concepts and amend original concepts as needed. The Board began developing the ideal reporting model conceptual guidance with a broad outline. Now that the outline has evolved into a draft statement, the Board could reconsider whether repeating existing concepts in the statement would best assist the Board in developing standards and helping the community understand the purposes of the information provided by federal financial accounting and reporting.

**Question 1:** Does the Board agree that the purpose of the concepts statement should focus on new concepts and amend existing concepts as needed?

### 2. Whether to Remove the Federal Financial Reporting Objectives

The August 2015 draft concepts statement restated the federal financial reporting objectives from Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts

(SFFAC) 1, *Objectives of Federal Financial Reporting*. That draft included the objectives to help readers understand users' information needs and the information that financial reporting should provide. However, because the new concepts statement is one of a series of concepts statements and the series currently provides information on users' needs and the objectives of financial reporting, the reporting objectives were removed from the revised draft.

**Question 2:** Does the Board agree that the objectives of federal financial reporting should be removed from the ideal reporting model concepts statement?

3. Whether Sections are Intended to Amend SFFAC 1 – Financial Reports That Include Financial Statements, Disclosures, and Required Supplementary Information (RSI)

The Financial Reports That Include Financial Statements, Disclosures, and RSI section of the draft concepts statement provides a general discussion of financial reports that include financial statements, disclosures, and RSI and GAAP. However, SFFAC 1 (paragraphs 21 to 34) provides similar language in discussing federal financial reporting and the role of FASAB. At the time the Board developed SFFAC 1, the Board had not been designated as the GAAP standards-setter for the federal government. Consequently, SFFAC 1 does not explicitly discuss GAAP-based reporting.

**Question 3:** Does the Board intend for the ideal reporting model Financial Reports That Include Financial Statements, Disclosures, and RSI section to amend and update SFFAC 1?

4. Whether Sections are Intended to Amend SFFAC 1 – Financial Statements, Disclosures, and RSI

The Financial Statements, Disclosures, and RSI section of the draft concepts statement discusses the role of financial statements, disclosures, and RSI. The Board believed that the role of financial statements, disclosures, and RSI should be discussed in the concepts statement to help clarify the relationships among information presented within financial reports. However, SFFAC 1, Chapter 7 provides similar language in discussing how accounting supports federal financial reporting. At the time the Board developed SFFAC 1, the Board had not been designated as the GAAP standards-setter for the federal government. Consequently, SFFAC 1 does not explicitly discuss GAAP-based reporting.

**Question 4:** Does the Board intend for the ideal reporting model Financial Statements, Disclosures, and RSI section to amend and update SFFAC 1?

5. Whether Sections are Intended to Amend SFFAC 1 – Relationship Between Financial Reports that Include Financial Statements, Disclosures, and RSI and Other Financial Reporting

The Relationship Between Financial Reports that Include Financial Statements, Disclosures, and RSI and Other Financial Reporting section of the draft concepts statement discusses the relationship between financial statements and other sources of financial information. Given the availability of electronic data and its potential impact on financial reporting, the Board believed the section was needed to clarify the relationships between financial statements and other financial reporting. However, SFFAC 1 (paragraphs 21 to 34) provides similar language in discussing federal financial reporting and the role of FASAB. At the time the Board developed SFFAC 1, the Board had not been designated as the GAAP standards-setter for the federal government. Consequently, SFFAC 1 does not explicitly discuss GAAP-based reporting.

**Question 5:** Does the Board intend for the ideal reporting model discussion on the Relationship Between Financial Reports that Include Financial Statements, Disclosures, and RSI and Other Financial Reporting to amend and update SFFAC 1?

6. Whether to Amend SFFAC 1 Regarding the Relationship Among Financial Statements, Disclosures, and RSI and Other Sources of Financial Information

Figure 1: Information for Assessing Accountability and for Decision-Making illustrates the relationship among financial statements, disclosures, and RSI and other sources of financial information. Board members believed that the illustration would be helpful in showing how GAAP-based reporting relates to other financial reporting sources, given the availability of electronic data. However, SFFAC 1, page 39 also provides an illustration depicting information used to assess accountability and performance, make planning and policy decisions, allocate resources, decide how to vote, and other decisions. The illustration focuses on showing how accounting contributes to information used by citizens and other user groups. However, the Board developed the presentation prior to FASAB's designation as the federal GAAP standards-setting body. Consequently, the illustration and the accompanying text (paragraphs 165 to 182) did not discuss GAAP.

**Question 6:** Does the Board believe that the new concepts statement's Figure 1: Information for Assessing Accountability and for Decision-Making should replace the SFFAC 1, page 39, illustration of information used to assess accountability and for decision-making and the accompanying text revised accordingly?

7. Whether to Amend SFFAC 3 Regarding Management's Discussion and Analysis

The draft concepts statement states that "the MD&A should discuss the relationships among the financial statements and the significant differences in the information they provide." However, SFFAC 3 provides conceptual guidance for the management discussion and analysis (MD&A). For instance, it states,

Understanding Financial Reporting—MD&A should make federal financial statements understandable to a wide audience, not just to users who are specialized analysts or members of the entity’s management. There may be many potential sources of misunderstanding. Management should try to identify those sources of misunderstanding that may be important and deal with them in MD&A. Some of these are general and pervasive, such as those that may arise in the minds of new users of federal financial statements. New users may have been budget-oriented rather than accrual-accounting oriented, or may be accustomed to seeing financial statements prepared on the basis of private sector accounting standards. A general discussion and reference to the Statement of Financing and the basis of accounting footnote may be sufficient for such users, although more specific treatment may be appropriate where the resulting differences in the reported amounts may be important to the understanding of users. (par. 37)

Consequently, the draft ideal reporting model concepts statement appears to amend SFFAC 3 and provide additional guidance.

**Question 7:** Does the Board intend to amend SFFAC 3?

8. Whether to Discuss the Need for Program Level Information

The August 2015 draft concepts statement used the term services rather than programs to describe the level of reporting that users ultimately need. However, existing conceptual guidance uses programs rather than services. SFFAC 1, *Objectives of Federal Financial Reporting*, discusses the need for program level reporting. For instance, the guidance states,

As a result, most elected and appointed federal officials, and the groups to which they are responsive, have been interested primarily in information about individual government programs, functions, or activities. They have been less interested in information about the government as a whole and even less concerned about intermediate levels of reporting, such as individual departments. (par. 59)

Citizens are interested in many aspects of the federal government. They are concerned about individual programs, candidates for office, the services the government provides, and the fiscal responsibility of their elected and appointed representatives. (par. 77)

Citizens want information about programs that affect them. Veterans, for example, want to know about new hospitals, and defense workers want information about contract awards (and cancellations). Retirees and people planning retirement—and their representatives in Congress—want to know that the Social Security Administration provides reliable services to the public. (par. 92)

Conversely, the concepts do not define the term program and different users may define the term differently.

**Question 8:** Considering that SFFAC 1 already discusses the need for program information and the challenges in defining the term, does the Board believe that the ideal reporting model concepts should discuss the need for program level information?

#### 9. Whether to Amend the Description of Financial Condition

The revised draft explains financial condition as the probability that the government will be able to meet its obligations as they become due and provide programs and services currently and in the future. The Board discussed financial condition during the June 2015 meeting and some members did not agree with the explanation presented in SFFAC 1 which states,

As more environmental data are added to the core data, a concept that is broader and more forward-looking than “financial position” emerges. That concept is “financial condition.” For the U.S. government, the additional data could include financial and nonfinancial information about current conditions and reasonable expectations regarding the national and even the global society. For example, the expected implications of environmental degradation; the relative competitiveness and productivity of the U.S. economy; or expected changes in the population’s composition in terms of age, gender, longevity, education, health, and income all might affect judgments about the government’s financial condition. (par. 180)

Information about financial condition can be conveyed in a variety of schedules, notes, projections, and narrative disclosures. Among the most important of these is management’s “discussion and analysis” of known trends, demands, commitments, events, and uncertainties. For federal reporting entities, management’s discussion and analysis might address such topics as

- budgetary compliance;
- internal control systems;
- capital resources and investments;
- service efforts, accomplishments, and results of operations; and
- the reasonably possible future impact of known trends, risks, demands, commitments, events, or uncertainties that may affect future operations.[footnote omitted] (par. 181)

Board members believed that the SFFAC 1 text was too broad. Factors such as environmental degradation and the productivity of the U.S. economy are beyond FASAB's scope. However, other members believed that a general understanding of such factors is needed to assess financial condition. Some members believe the Board could develop guidance to aid in reporting information useful for assessing financial condition.

**Question 9:** Does the Board believe that the ideal reporting model concepts statement should amend the SFFAC 1 description of financial condition (paragraphs 180 and 181)?

#### 10. Whether Sections are Intended to Amend SFFAC 1 – Budgetary Information

The Budgetary Information section of the draft concepts statement discusses the budgetary information that users need. However, SFFAC 1 (paragraphs 112 to 121) also discusses the budgetary information that users need and what information would help achieve the budgetary integrity reporting objective, and paragraphs 186 to 191 discusses the relationship between financial reporting and budgeting.

**Question 10:** Does the Board intend for the Budgetary Information section of the ideal reporting model concepts statement to amend and update SFFAC 1?

#### 11. Whether Sections are Intended to Amend SFFAC 1 – Performance Information

The Performance Information section of the draft concepts statement discusses the performance information that users need. However, SFFAC 1 discusses the performance information that users need and what information would help achieve the operating performance objective (paragraphs 122 to 132), and how financial reporting supports reporting on operating performance (paragraphs 192 to 212).

**Question 11:** Does the Board intend for the Performance Information section of the ideal reporting model concepts statement to amend and update SFFAC 1?

#### 12. Whether Sections are Intended to Amend SFFAS 4 – Cost Accounting

The Cost Accounting section of the draft concepts statement discusses the need for cost accounting. However, SFFAS 4 (paragraphs 41 to 66) discusses managerial cost accounting concepts and the need for cost accounting.

**Question 12:** Does the Board intend for the Cost Accounting section of the ideal reporting model concepts statement to amend and update SFFAS 4?

#### 13. Additional Suggestions

**Question 13:** Does the Board have additional suggestions for changes to the proposed language in the document?



Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board

---

**TITLE**  
SUBTITLE

**Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts**

**Exposure Draft**

Written comments are requested by [date 90 days after issuance]

Month day, year

Working Draft – Comments Are Not Requested on This Draft

---

## THE FEDERAL ACCOUNTING STANDARDS ADVISORY BOARD

The Secretary of the Treasury, the Director of the Office of Management and Budget (OMB), and the Comptroller General, established the Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board (FASAB or "the Board") in October 1990. FASAB is responsible for promulgating accounting standards for the United States Government. These standards are recognized as generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for the federal government.

An accounting standard is typically formulated initially as a proposal after considering the financial and budgetary information needs of citizens (including the news media, state and local legislators, analysts from private firms, academe, and elsewhere), Congress, federal executives, federal program managers, and other users of federal financial information. The proposed standards are published in an Exposure Draft for public comment. In some cases, a discussion memorandum, invitation for comment, or preliminary views document may be published before an exposure draft is published on a specific topic. A public hearing is sometimes held to receive oral comments in addition to written comments. The Board considers comments and decides whether to adopt the proposed standard with or without modification. After review by the three officials who sponsor FASAB, the Board publishes adopted standards in a Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Standards. The Board follows a similar process for Statements of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts, which guide the Board in developing accounting standards and formulating the framework for federal accounting and reporting.

Additional background information is available from the FASAB or its website:

- ["Memorandum of Understanding among the Government Accountability Office, the Department of the Treasury, and the Office of Management and Budget, on Federal Government Accounting Standards and a Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board."](#)
- ["Mission Statement: Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board"](#), [exposure drafts](#), [Statements of Federal Financial Accounting Standards and Concepts](#), [FASAB newsletters](#), and other items of interest are posted on FASAB's website at: [www.fasab.gov](http://www.fasab.gov).

### Copyright Information

This is a work of the U. S. government and is not subject to copyright protection in the United States. It may be reproduced and distributed in its entirety without further permission from FASAB. However, because this work may contain copyrighted images or other material, permission from the copyright holder may be necessary if you wish to reproduce this material separately.

### Contact us:

Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board  
441 G Street, NW, Suite 6814  
Mail stop 6H19  
Washington, DC 20548  
Telephone 202-512-7350  
FAX – 202-512-7366  
[www.fasab.gov](http://www.fasab.gov)



Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board

ISSUE DATE

TO: ALL WHO USE, PREPARE, AND AUDIT FEDERAL FINANCIAL INFORMATION

Your comments on the exposure draft of a proposed Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts, entitled **TITLE**, are requested. Specific questions for your consideration appear on page 7 but you are welcome to comment on any aspect of this proposal. If you do not agree with the proposed approach, your response would be more helpful to the Board if you explain the reasons for your position and any alternative you propose. Responses are requested by DUE DATE.

All comments received by the FASAB are considered public information. Those comments may be posted to the FASAB's website and will be included in the project's public record.

Mail delivery is delayed by screening procedures. Therefore, please provide your comments in electronic form by e-mail to [fasab@fasab.gov](mailto:fasab@fasab.gov). If you are unable to e-mail your responses, we encourage you to fax the comments to (202) 512-7366. Alternatively, you may mail your comments to:

Wendy M. Payne, Executive Director  
Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board  
Mailstop H19  
441 G Street, NW, Suite 6814  
Washington, DC 20548

We will confirm receipt of your comments. If you do not receive confirmation, please contact our office at 202.512.7350 to determine if your comments were received.

The Board's rules of procedure provide that it may hold one or more public hearings on any exposure draft. No hearing has yet been scheduled for this exposure draft. **or** A public hearing has been scheduled at 9:00 AM on Month Day, Year, in Room 7C13 at the GAO Building, 441 G Street, NW, Washington, D.C.

Notice of the date and location of any public hearing on this document will be published in the Federal Register and in the FASAB's newsletter.

Sincerely,

Tom L. Allen  
Chairman

## STATEMENTS OF FEDERAL FINANCIAL ACCOUNTING CONCEPTS

---

Statements of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts (SFFAC) set forth objectives and fundamentals on which financial accounting and reporting standards are based. The objectives identify the goals and purposes of financial reporting and the fundamentals are the underlying concepts of financial accounting—concepts that guide the selection of transactions, events, and circumstances to be accounted for; their recognition and measurement; and the means of summarizing and communicating them to interested parties.

Concepts statements guide the Board's development of accounting and reporting standards by providing the Board with a common foundation and basic reasoning on which to consider the merits of alternatives. Also, knowledge of the objectives and concepts the Board considers should help users and others who are affected by or interested in federal financial accounting and reporting standards to understand better the purposes, content, and qualitative characteristics of information provided by federal financial accounting and reporting.

The conceptual framework addresses many of the fundamentals needed to support standards setting. FASAB developed the core of its conceptual framework in the early 1990s. At that time, financial management legislation and administrative directives focused on component level reporting. Hence, the FASAB's second concept statement, Entity and Display, focused on the basis for defining a reporting entity and the display of component financial statements. Other concepts statements address financial reporting objectives; qualitative characteristics of information; the intended audience for the ~~consolidated~~ financial report of the U.S. Government (GFR); elements of accrual basis statements and their measurement attributes; communication methods; and managerial cost accounting.

Through its ongoing conceptual framework project, the FASAB has reviewed its early concepts statements and is establishing new statements as needed. The FASAB Handbook of ~~AA~~ccounting Standards and Other Pronouncements, As Amended (FASAB Handbook) provides a full discussion of FASAB's SFFACs and can be accessed at <http://www.fasab.gov/accounting-standards/authoritative-source-of-gaap/accounting-standards/fasab-handbook/>.

## EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

---

### WHAT IS THE BOARD PROPOSING?

---

This statement discusses concepts that should be applied in developing standards for ideal the government-wide and component entity reporting models which include financial statements, disclosures or notes, and required supplementary information (RSI). The concepts consist of guidance regarding: 1) the relationship of information within financial reports and between financial reports and other sources of financial reporting; 2) the impact and availability of electronic data and systems on financial reporting; 3) specific financial reporting objectives for the government-wide and component entity financial reports; and 4) reporting objectives for budgetary and performance information, cost accounting, and summary reporting.

### HOW WOULD THIS PROPOSAL IMPROVE FEDERAL FINANCIAL REPORTING AND CONTRIBUTE TO MEETING THE FEDERAL FINANCIAL REPORTING OBJECTIVES?

---

The concepts will help improve government-wide and component entity reporting. The federal government is making financial data available to users electronically and users are able to access a variety of reports and customize their own reports. Also, the government provides a range of reports to address different users' information needs. For example, the government provides a financial report that includes financial statements, disclosures, and RSI. The financial report provides users with information on the government's net operating costs for the period, the fiscal gap, and budget deficit. Also, through websites, the government makes service performance information available for individual departments and agencies and financial data. Given the variety of reports that could be produced and discussed, questions could develop regarding how financial reports that include financial statements, disclosures, and RSI relate to other reporting. This proposal explains: the relationship among information within these financial reports; the relationship between these financial reports and other sources; and the impact of electronic data and systems on financial reporting.

Also, this proposal provides specific objectives for government-wide and component entity reporting to help ensure that the financial reports that include financial statements, disclosures, and RSI address users' needs. The government as a whole and its components present these financial reports. However, the reporting entities have different financing structures and users have different information needs. As a result, the government-wide and component entities need specific reporting objectives.

In addition, this proposal provides reporting objectives to help ensure that the financial reports provide the budgetary and performance information users need. Users need budgetary information to assist them in assessing the government's compliance with budgetary legislation and performance information to assist them in assessing the government's accomplishments.

Moreover, cost accounting is important for addressing users' information needs. Users need information on the efficiency and effectiveness of the government's programs and cost information to assist in choosing among alternative actions. Consequently, this proposal provides objectives for cost accounting.

This proposal also provides objectives for summary reporting. Users need brief presentations and may start with a brief presentation to identify areas for more research.

Financial report users expect information about federal programs or services. In addition, they expect integrated budget, cost, and performance information to assist them in holding federal leaders accountable and for decision making. The existing reporting models for the government as a whole and for its components provide comprehensive information to help meet the information expectations of users. The models permit the presentation of different levels of detail through financial statements, disclosures, and RSI. However, both models employ different and broad classification structures to summarize data and help provide users with entity level perspectives rather than employing a structure to also guide users to the discreet information about programs.

For example, existing financial statements for the government as a whole may classify costs by department and agency and departments and agencies may classify costs by strategic goals or other approaches depending on the entity's discretion. Also, disclosures to the financial statements may break down the cost of each strategic goal by sub-organization or organizational unit that contributes to the strategic goal. While this approach provides different levels of detail, the level that users seek about services may not be presented or references may not be provided to help users locate the information.

This statement discusses the concepts that the reporting models should apply. It considers users expectation for information that helps explain the changes in the government's financial condition; amounts budgeted to deliver services; the cost of services delivered; and the results of the services. Providing information that users seek helps ensure the accountability of the federal government and that financial reports achieve the financial reporting objectives. Consequently, the concepts will help guide the Board in developing standards for reporting models that provide the level of information that users seek.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| <b>Statements of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts .....</b>  | <b>4</b>  |
| <b>Executive Summary .....</b>  | <b>1</b>  |
| <u>What is the Board proposing?.....</u>  | <u>1</u>  |
| <u>How would this proposal improve federal financial reporting and contribute to meeting the federal financial reporting objectives?.....</u> | <u>1</u>  |
| <b>Questions for Respondents .....</b>  | <b>5</b>  |
| <b>Introduction .....</b>   | <b>6</b>  |
| <u>Purpose.....</u>   | <u>6</u>  |
| <u>Scope .....</u>  | <u>7</u>  |
| <b>Proposed Concepts .....</b>  | <b>10</b> |
| <u>Financial Reports that Include Financial Statements, Disclosures, and RSI.....</u>   | <u>10</u> |
| <u>Financial Statements, Disclosures, and RSI .....</u>   | <u>12</u> |
| <u>Relationship Between Financial Reports that Include Financial Statements, Disclosures, and RSI and Other Financial Reporting ..</u>        | <u>14</u> |
| <u>Reporting by Government-Wide and Component Reporting Entities .....</u>  | <u>17</u> |
| The Government-Wide Reporting Entity .....  | 18        |
| The Component Reporting Entity.....   | 21        |
| <u>Budgetary Information .....</u>  | <u>24</u> |
| <u>Performance Information .....</u>  | <u>28</u> |
| <u>Cost Accounting .....</u>  | <u>30</u> |
| <u>Summary Reporting.....</u>   | <u>30</u> |
| <b>Appendix A: Basis for Conclusions .....</b>  | <b>32</b> |
| <u>Project history.....</u>   | <u>32</u> |
| <b>Appendix B: Abbreviations .....</b>  | <b>39</b> |
| <b>Appendix C: Glossary.....</b>  | <b>40</b> |
| <b>Statements of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts .....</b>  | <b>4</b>  |
| <b>Executive Summary .....</b>  | <b>1</b>  |
| <u>What is the Board proposing?.....</u>  | <u>1</u>  |

|  |                  |
|--|------------------|
| <u>How would this proposal improve federal financial reporting and contribute to meeting the federal financial reporting objectives? .....</u> | <u>1</u>         |
| <b><u>Questions for Respondents .....</u></b>  | <b><u>3</u></b>  |
| <b><u>Introduction .....</u></b>   | <b><u>4</u></b>  |
| <u>Purpose.....</u>  | <u>4</u>         |
| <u>Scope .....</u>   | <u>4</u>         |
| <b><u>Proposed Concepts .....</u></b>  | <b><u>6</u></b>  |
| <u>Federal Financial Reporting Objectives .....</u>  | <u>6</u>         |
| <u>Financial Reports.....</u>  | <u>6</u>         |
| <u>Financial Statements, Disclosures, and RSI .....</u>  | <u>8</u>         |
| <u>Relationship Between GAAP-Based Financial Reports and Other Financial Reporting .....</u>   | <u>9</u>         |
| <u>Reporting by Government-Wide and Component Reporting Entities .....</u>   | <u>13</u>        |
| <u>The Government Wide Reporting Entity .....</u>  | <u>13</u>        |
| <u>The Component Reporting Entity.....</u>   | <u>16</u>        |
| <u>Budgetary Information .....</u>   | <u>19</u>        |
| <u>Basic Concepts to Consider.....</u>   | <u>19</u>        |
| <u>Performance Information .....</u>   | <u>21</u>        |
| <u>Cost Accounting .....</u>   | <u>22</u>        |
| <u>Summary Reporting.....</u>  | <u>23</u>        |
| <b><u>Appendix A: Basis for Conclusions .....</u></b>  | <b><u>25</u></b> |
| <u>Project history.....</u>  | <u>25</u>        |
| <b><u>Appendix B: Illustrations.....</u></b>   | <b><u>28</u></b> |
| <b><u>Appendix C: Abbreviations .....</u></b>  | <b><u>29</u></b> |
| <b><u>Appendix D: Glossary.....</u></b>  | <b><u>30</u></b> |

## QUESTIONS FOR RESPONDENTS

---

The Board encourages you to become familiar with all proposals in the Statement before responding to the questions in this section. In addition to the questions below, the Board also would welcome your comments on other aspects of the proposed Statement. Because the proposals may be modified before a final Statement is issued, it is important that you comment on proposals that you favor as well as any that you do not favor. Comments that include the reasons for your views will be especially appreciated.

The Board believes that this proposal would improve federal financial reporting and contribute to meeting the Federal financial reporting objectives. The Board has considered the perceived costs associated with this proposal. In responding, please consider the expected benefits and perceived costs and communicate any concerns that you may have in regard to implementing this proposal.

The questions in this section are available in a Word file for your use at [www.fasab.gov/exposure.html](http://www.fasab.gov/exposure.html). Your responses should be sent by e-mail to [fasab@fasab.gov](mailto:fasab@fasab.gov). If you are unable to respond by e-mail, please fax your responses to (202) 512-7366. Alternatively, you may mail your responses to:

Wendy M. Payne, Executive Director  
Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board  
Mailstop 6H19  
441 G Street, NW, Suite 6814  
Washington, DC 20548

All responses are requested by [insert date].

- Q1. A summary of the issue (one paragraph) should be presented followed by a question. If multiple questions follow one issue summary, use letters to distinguish them.
- Q2. New Question

## INTRODUCTION

### PURPOSE

1. This statement discusses concepts ~~to assist that should guide~~ the FASAB in developing standards for ~~an ideal the government-wide and component entity~~ reporting models.
  4. ~~While current concepts generally remain relevant, certain areas should be enhanced, including:~~ 1) integration of information within and between financial reports from all sources and clarification of the relationships among these sources; 2) impact and availability of electronic data and systems on financial reporting; 3) specific financial reporting objectives for the government-wide and component entity financial reports; and 4) reporting objectives for budgetary and performance information, cost accounting, and summary reporting.
2. ~~The Board researched u~~Users' expectations regarding government-wide and component entity financial reporting and determined the need for enhancing the existing reporting model and developing an ideal model that would not necessarily be constrained by today's systems.
  - 3.2. ~~The Board observed that users primarily s~~needought integrated budget, cost, and performance information about federal programs ~~and services~~. They also ~~expected need~~ to understand whether the government's financial condition improved or deteriorated ~~for the reporting period~~. In addition, users ~~need to noted challenges in~~ understanding component budgetary ~~information report and ing due to the unique terms and concepts used and understanding the~~ relationship between the government-wide and component entities' reports given the different financial statements used in each model. For example, the component entity model includes a statement of budgetary resources while the government-wide model does not.
- 4.3. Moreover, ~~in addition to reports that include financial statements and disclosures prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) and RSI,~~ the federal government makes a range of reports available ~~to users, including budget and non-financial performance reports and reports on systems and controls in addition to the financial reports prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting standards (GAAP)~~. However, users ~~may not need to~~ understand the relationship among the variety of reports and they may expect to ~~leverage technology to~~ access data from multiple sources, drill-down through different levels of aggregated data, and create their own reports. Thus, the means of preparing reports has evolved and the volume and type of reports that can be prepared has grown since the ~~earlier concepts initial model~~ ~~were as~~ developed.
4. In developing an ideal reporting model, certain concepts from the existing framework will be reemphasized. This approach will ensure that the Board fully considers the concepts that are most important to addressing users' expectations. Consequently, this concepts statement will reference earlier concepts, particularly Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts (SFFAC) 1, *Objectives of Federal Financial Reporting*. SFFAC 1 discusses the users of financial reports and their information needs; the objectives of federal financial reporting; and the qualitative characteristics of information. ~~This e~~concepts

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0.31", No bullets or numbering

statement also discusses the relationship between financial reporting and budgeting, ~~and~~ financial reporting and performance reporting, and financial reporting and cost accounting, areas important to developing a reporting model to meet users' expectations and achieving the reporting objectives.

~~5.~~

## SCOPE

---

~~6.5.~~ The overall financial reporting objectives are broad. SFFAC 1, par. 10 notes that they apply to both internal and external financial reports. The intention being to improve the quality of data available for a wide variety of applications. However, their breadth combined with the growth in data sources raise questions regarding the FASAB's role; particularly with regard to budgetary integrity and systems and controls. These are viewed as unconventional objectives for a GAAP standards-setting body.

~~7.6.~~ The Budget of the United States Government is the most widely recognized and used financial report of the federal government. The budget process is the government's principal mechanism for reaching agreement on goals, for allocating resources among competing uses, and for assessing the government's fiscal effects on economic stability and growth. ~~Budgetary measurement is designed to assist in the control and allocation of resources by showing the cash outlays implied by each decision when the decision is made.~~ While most attention is paid to these future-oriented roles of the budget process, budget execution is designed to control and track tax receipts and the use of resources according to the purposes for which budget authority was approved.<sup>1</sup>

~~8.7.~~ The Board's authority does not extend to recommending budgetary concepts or standards ~~or budgetary concepts~~. However, the Board is charged with giving consideration to "the budgetary information needs of executive agencies and the needs of users of federal financial information"<sup>2</sup> and has committed to supporting efforts to ensure the accuracy and reliability of reporting on the budget. While budgetary and financial accounting information are presented on different bases of accounting ~~based upon distinct standards~~, the information is, in effect, about different stages of the same transaction, ~~and~~ The relationships among the information ~~can~~ need to be understood.<sup>3</sup>

~~9.8.~~ With respect to the Board's focus,<sup>4</sup> SFFAC 1, paragraph 191 states,

The Board's own focus is on developing generally accepted accounting standards for reporting on the financial operations, financial position, and financial condition of the federal government and its component entities and other useful financial information. This implies a variety of measures of costs and other information that complements the information available in the budget. Together with budgetary reports, these reports will

---

<sup>1</sup> SFFAC 1, par. 187-190.

<sup>2</sup> FASAB Memorandum of Understanding, October 2009.

<sup>3</sup> SFFAC 1, par. 176.

<sup>4</sup> The American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA) designated FASAB's as the source of generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for federal reporting entities.

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0.06", Hanging: 0.25", No bullets or numbering

provide a more comprehensive and insightful understanding of the government's financial position, results of operations, and financial condition than either set of reports alone.

Consequently, federal financial reports should support access to both accrual and budgetary ~~and accrual~~ basis financial information. ~~Nonetheless, given the limited role of the Board with respect to budgetary standards and concepts as well as the evolution of systems and controls reporting since the early 1990s, the Board's primary role will be to improve information measured on an accrual basis. This will require the Board to focus on achieving the operating performance and stewardship objectives and accrual basis accounting.~~

- ~~9.~~ For reporting purposes, economic events can be measured using different bases, such as the accrual, cash, or obligation ~~budgetary, or accrual~~ basis. When using the accrual basis, costs are recognized when financial and other resources are consumed. As a result, the accrual basis facilitates an assessment of service performance because costs reflect the resources consumed in the same period that the services were provided.
- ~~10.~~ Citizens, Congress, government executives, and government managers need to assess the cost of government services and determine the efficiency and effectiveness of service delivery. They also need information on the government's financial condition. Accrual basis costs are recognized to facilitate comparisons of resource use with service delivery and accomplishments which can help users develop the measures relevant to their assessments. In addition, the accrual basis helps users understand how the government financed those costs during the reporting period and the effect on the government's financial condition.
- ~~10.~~~~11.~~ Using the cash-cash basis, events are recorded on the basis of cash flows. For instance, revenues are recognized when cash is received and costs are recognized when cash is paid. ~~While this basis may be relevant to managing cash and assessing borrowing needs, it is less relevant to assessing the performance of services. The basis could distort the current year costs of services because it does not include the consumption of resources paid for in previous years.~~
- ~~12.~~ Also, to demonstrate compliance with legislation established in authorization and appropriation acts, component entities apply the budgetary or obligation basis. This basis recognizes economic events when the government enters into agreements which obligate the government to make payments in the future, such as placing orders or awarding contracts. ~~Because it primarily focuses on the purchase of resources, the obligation basis is less relevant for reporting on how well the government used the resource after its purchase.~~
- ~~13.~~ Given the limited role of the Board with respect to budgetary standards and concepts, the Board's primary role will be to improve information measured on an accrual basis. This will require the Board to focus on achieving the operating performance and stewardship objectives and developing accrual basis accounting standards.
- ~~14.~~~~14.~~ The operating performance objective calls for information on the cost of specific programs and the efforts and accomplishments associated with them. The objective also

calls for information on efficiency and effectiveness of delivering services. Consequently, the statement discusses performance information and cost accounting.

- ~~12. Using the accrual basis, costs are recognized when resources are consumed. As a result, the accrual basis facilitates an assessment of service performance because costs reflect the resources consumed in the same period that the services were provided. It helps users determine how well the government used resources after their purchase.~~
- ~~13. Citizens, Congress, government executives, and government managers expect to assess the cost of government services and determine the efficiency and effectiveness of service delivery. They also seek information on the government's financial condition. Accrual basis costs are recognized to facilitate comparisons of resource use with service delivery which can help users develop the measures relevant to their assessments. In addition, the accrual basis is useful for helping users understand how the government financed those costs and the effect on the government's net position.~~

**Formatted:** Indent: Left: 0.06", Hanging: 0.25", No bullets or numbering

## PROPOSED CONCEPTS

---

### FEDERAL FINANCIAL REPORTING OBJECTIVES

---

*Users and their information needs determine the objectives of financial reporting and these objectives are the foundation for all other concepts.*

14. *Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts (SFFAC) 1: Objectives of Federal Financial Reporting (Objectives) discusses the types of users of financial information, their financial information needs, and the objectives of reporting financial information. The overall financial reporting objectives are:*

- a. *Budgetary Integrity. Federal financial reporting should assist in fulfilling the government's duty to be publicly accountable for monies raised through taxes and other means and for their expenditure in accordance with the appropriations laws that establish the government's budget for a particular fiscal year and related laws and regulations.*
- b. *Operating Performance. Federal financial reporting should assist report users in evaluating the service efforts, costs, and accomplishments of the reporting entity; the manner in which these efforts and accomplishments have been financed; and the management of the entity's assets and liabilities.*
- c. *Stewardship. Federal financial reporting should assist report users in assessing the impact on the country of the government's operations and investments for the period and how, as a result, the government's and the nation's financial condition has changed and may change in the future.*
- d. *Systems and Controls. Federal financial reporting should assist report users in understanding whether financial management systems and internal accounting and administrative controls are adequate to ensure that transactions are executed in accordance with budgetary and financial laws and other requirements, consistent with the purposes authorized, and are recorded in accordance with federal accounting standards; assets are properly safeguarded to deter fraud, waste, and abuse; and performance measurement information is adequately supported.*

15. *These objectives are the foundation for all other concepts and other concepts flow logically from them.*

### FINANCIAL REPORTS THAT INCLUDE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS, DISCLOSURES, AND RSI

---

*Financial reports that include financial statements, disclosures, and RSI provide comprehensive information about the reporting entity. The information is based on a structured framework to ensure the information possesses basic qualities such as relevance and comparability. Ideally, the financial reports integrate data from various*

sources with needed explanatory material. *Significant judgment is needed in making decisions about the level of detail and basis for aggregating information to best meet user needs.*

- ~~16-15.~~ The information in financial reports that include financial statements, disclosures, and RSI must possess certain basic characteristics. Those basic characteristics are: understandability, reliability, relevance, timeliness, consistency, and comparability. SFFAC 1<sup>5</sup> discusses each of them in detail. Among other things, these characteristics recognize the importance of reporting transactions and events in accordance with their substance even if that differs from their form. Thus, transactions and other events are analyzed carefully to ensure the financial reports possess these basic characteristics.
- ~~17-16.~~ Financial reports including financial statements, disclosures, and required supplementary information (RSI). ~~This structure provides a structure that~~ enables the financial reports to provide different levels of aggregated quantitative and narrative ~~and quantitative~~ information, for a comprehensive perspective about the reporting entity. For example, disclosures may help users better understand aggregated amounts presented in financial statements and provide a more detailed view of the government's financial activities. Also, supplementary information such as Management's Discussion and Analysis (MD&A) may explain the purpose, importance, and kinds of information being reported to users and the relationships among the kinds of information. SFFAC 2, *Entity and Display*, as amended provides factors for distinguishing among between financial statements and RSI ~~the required components of financial reports~~.<sup>6</sup>
- ~~18-17.~~ User needs reflected in the reporting objectives are broad and require the integration of data from various sources. Generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) assists in relating information provided by numerous sources. GAAP is developed through an open and deliberative process that facilitates agreement on criteria that should be used in categorizing, recognizing, measuring, and depicting the government's financial activities in financial reports ~~that include financial statements, disclosures, and RSI~~.
- ~~19-18.~~ GAAP also governs the terms and elements that should be used. Definitions of terms and elements help users consider how the data should be used and how elements relate to each other. In due course, the definitions would facilitate a common understanding and their consistent application.
- ~~20-~~ While financial reports that include financial statements, disclosures, and RSI must be prepared in a structured manner, the reports are improved when the preparer considers overall objectives and context rather than striving solely for compliance. The level of detail to present in a general purpose report is a matter of judgment and other reporting sources may provide cost-beneficial options for meeting special purpose needs.

<sup>5</sup> SFFAC 1, par. 157 -164.

<sup>6</sup> SFFAC 2, Entity and Display, as amended, Table 1: Factors to Consider in Distinguishing Basic Information from RSI.

19.

Formatted: Outline numbered + Level: 1 +  
Numbering Style: 1, 2, 3, ... + Start at: 1 +  
Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0.06" + Indent  
at: 0.31"

## FINANCIAL STATEMENTS, DISCLOSURES, AND RSI

*Financial statements assist in providing accurate and reliable information to users. As part of the financial report, they are the basic means of communicating the sources, uses, and status of and results of using financial resources, and the sustainability of services. When combined with non-financial performance information, financial statements support assessments of the results and accomplishments of using resources. They are essential for the federal government in demonstrating accountability and other information helps explain items in financial statements, provides greater detail, and supplements financial statements.*

~~21-20.~~ Financial statements aggregate, classify and depict various items of information expressed in words (labels) and amounts (dollars). Systems and controls are required to ensure that all the entity's events, transactions, and balances are depicted along with needed disclosures. This leads to highly aggregated but complete information on the face of financial statements. Such information is essential for demonstrating accountability but may be less useful for making specific decisions requiring less aggregated information.

~~22-21.~~ Financial statements should be prepared and issued using disciplined processes to ensure that the information is accurate and reliable. GAAP helps ensure that financial statements present information to users consistent with the qualitative characteristics of understandability, reliability, relevance, timeliness, consistency, and comparability. ~~in an understandable and consistent manner.~~ Also, financial statements audited in accordance with Generally Accepted Government Auditing Standards (GAGAS) help establish discipline in the underlying financial systems and the established discipline provides an increased level of assurance that the information, such as special purpose reports and transaction level data, provided from the underlying systems is ~~accurate and~~ reliable.

~~23-22.~~ Financial statements provide a framework for more detailed analyses. Users may analyze financial statements to identify particular services or ~~accounts and transactions~~ for detailed review. Financial statements can be linked to other sources to facilitate user understanding. For instance, a financial statement presenting costs on the World Wide Web ~~could be linked to performance reports to help users better understand the reason for the costs and the results of the costs incurred.~~

~~24-23.~~ The interrelationship among information presented in financial statements including MD&A and non-financial performance information should be understandable. This may be evident from the titles and lines used on the statements or accomplished through narrative explanation elsewhere.

~~25-24.~~ Accomplishing the broad objectives requires different types of financial statements. For example, information is needed to assist users in expect to assessing the:

a. government's adherence to legislation that establishes the entity's budget;

b. sources of revenues;

~~a-c.~~ level and purposes of government spending;

~~b.~~ level and composition of resources that can be used to provide current and future services and the claims against those resources;

~~c-d.~~ government's adherence to legislation that establishes the entity's budget; and

~~d-e.~~ likelihood that future budgetary resources would be sufficient to sustain services.

Accordingly, financial ~~reports may include cash, accrual, and budgetary basis statements and statements presenting projections. statements may present the sources, uses, and status of budget resources; source use and status of economic resources; and an understanding of projected resources and uses thereof.~~

~~26-25.~~ Understandable interrelationships among the statements can be accomplished in the following manner:

- a. articulation ~~among the statements, presenting financial statements in a manner such that the relationships among them are self-evident;~~<sup>7</sup>
- b. if the relationships among the statements are not self-evident, a reconciliation on the face of the statements could be shown; or
- c. the relationships could be described in a narrative disclosure.

~~27-26.~~ In addition, the MD&A should discuss the relationships among the ~~basic~~ financial statements and the significant differences in the information they provide.

~~28-27.~~ The federal financial reporting objectives are broad and financial reports which include financial statements, disclosures,<sup>8</sup> and RSI cannot reasonably be expected to achieve all of them. As noted in SFFAC 1, paragraph 36, the FASAB expects that some of the objectives may best be accomplished through means of reporting outside general purpose financial statements a result, financial reports include disclosures<sup>9</sup> and RSI.

~~29-28.~~ Disclosures are an integral part of financial statements. They can provide more detailed information related to the items and amounts presented on the face of financial statements. Also, disclosures can help enhance user understanding by defining items, explaining how items are measured, and discussing their relationships.

~~30-29.~~ In addition, RSI provides information important and relevant to the reporting objectives and may be expressed in other than financial measures or may not be subject to reliable estimation. RSI may also be useful for presenting multiple periods of information to help

<sup>7</sup> For instance, an amount appearing in one statement also appears in another statement.

<sup>8</sup> Disclosures include notes or narrative regarded as an integral part of the basic financial statement.

<sup>9</sup> ~~Disclosures include notes or narrative regarded as an integral part of the basic financial statement.~~

identify trends. Accordingly, RSI may provide a lower cost approach to presenting disaggregated information.

~~31-30.~~ Financial reports that include financial statements, disclosures, and RSI may link information in related reports such as budget, non-financial performance, or systems and controls reports. Accordingly, financial reports that include financial statements, disclosures, and RSI should discuss what related information is included in other reports and how it relates to the information presented in financial statements, disclosures, and RSI.

~~32.~~ Achieving the reporting objectives may require information from a variety of sources. However, a variety of disparate sources can result in redundant, incomplete, or inconsistent presentations. Consequently, GAAP provides criteria to facilitate the exchange of information among the sources and user understanding and ensures that financial statements, disclosures, and RSI are complete.

31.

Formatted: Outline numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: 1, 2, 3, ... + Start at: 1 + Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0.06" + Indent at: 0.31"

## RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN ~~GAAP-BASED FINANCIAL REPORTS THAT INCLUDE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS, DISCLOSURES, AND RSI AND OTHER FINANCIAL REPORTING~~ AND OTHER FINANCIAL REPORTING

*Financial reports that include financial statements, disclosures, and RSI provide useful information to meet the common needs of various users. These financial reports demonstrate accountability and support decision making. However, it is unlikely that the financial reports can provide all the information that a user may need for decision-making. Consequently, other financial reporting sources helps achieve the reporting objectives. Some other sources may rely on the same terminology and data sources used in preparing financial statements to present information at the level of detail needed by the decision maker.*

~~33-32.~~ Financial reports that include financial statements, disclosures, and RSI reports prepared in conformity with GAAP are meet the broad significant to providing useful information to users. They seek an integrated mechanism for meeting the reporting objectives in a single, general purpose presentation ~~federal financial report~~, focusing on certain qualitative characteristics to facilitate an effective presentation. Due to the aggregated nature of such information, it is not likely that the report can provide all the information that a user may need for decision-making.

~~34.~~ Other financial reporting may provide additional information to help achieve specific aspects of the reporting objectives but may not be intended to comprehensively portray the economic events and transactions of the entity as a whole. For example, other financial reporting may provide access to detailed Where consistent data standards are used, other reporting sources may also present an integrated presentation and provide financial information that may complement financial reports prepared in conformity with GAAP. They may provide information on assets, liabilities, obligations, revenues, expenses, and/or other

items. Also, legislative bodies are requiring governments to make transaction level data more accessible. The emerging practice of providing access to less aggregated information may permit users to create their own reports. Consequently, financial statements and other financial reportings and other sources may share the same underlying data and systems.

35. However, their objectives of reporting may differ. The objective of other sources may be to address specific questions or present the details of certain types of information, such as the entity's recorded obligations during the period. Such reporting is not intended to comprehensively portray the economic events and transactions of the entity as a whole.

36. Users may need information that address specific issues and, accordingly, consult other reporting sources that provide relevant information in light of the reporting objectives. Users often seek information more disaggregated than information provided in the financial statements. These reporting sources may provide budgetary or performance information, or information on the economy. Consequently, these sources may be directed to particular users, such as expert analysts or internal users who have agreed on the form and content of the information. In addition, users may access the sources and create their own reports.

37. Preparers in general should leverage technology to create tools providing greater access to information. The degree to which tools enable preparers to meet the reporting objectives may depend on user understanding and the functionality of available tools. Certain objectives can be met with different levels of aggregated information and may require non-financial information. Also, highly interactive presentations would enhance a user's experience with the data and facilitate access.

38-33. In addition, highly interactive technology could be used to enable users to aggregate and disaggregate items presented in financial reports, such as the cost of services. For example, users expect information on the cost of government services and may seek disaggregated information by object class. Reporting could allow the user to interactively select the summary level cost item and move to greater detail.

39-34. However, other financial reporting sources of reporting and interactive tools may not be exposed to the same level of discipline as GAAP sources such as financial statements, disclosures, and RSI and may not be based on standards consistent with those used in preparing financial statements. GAAP sources such as well-developed internal controls. Other sources and interactive tools may not be subjected to an audit and may be prepared using differing criteria with respect to the recognition of events and transactions. For example, other sources or tools may omit information about relevant events such as commitments to make payments far in the future. Consequently, the information may not have the same level of reliability as GAAP reporting and may not ensure comparability among entities or consistency across periods of time. financial statements. Also, other sources may not meet the qualitative characteristics established for financial statements, disclosures, and RSI. Figure 1: Information for Assessing Accountability and for Decision-Making illustrates the relationship among financial statements, disclosures, and RSI and other sources of financial information.

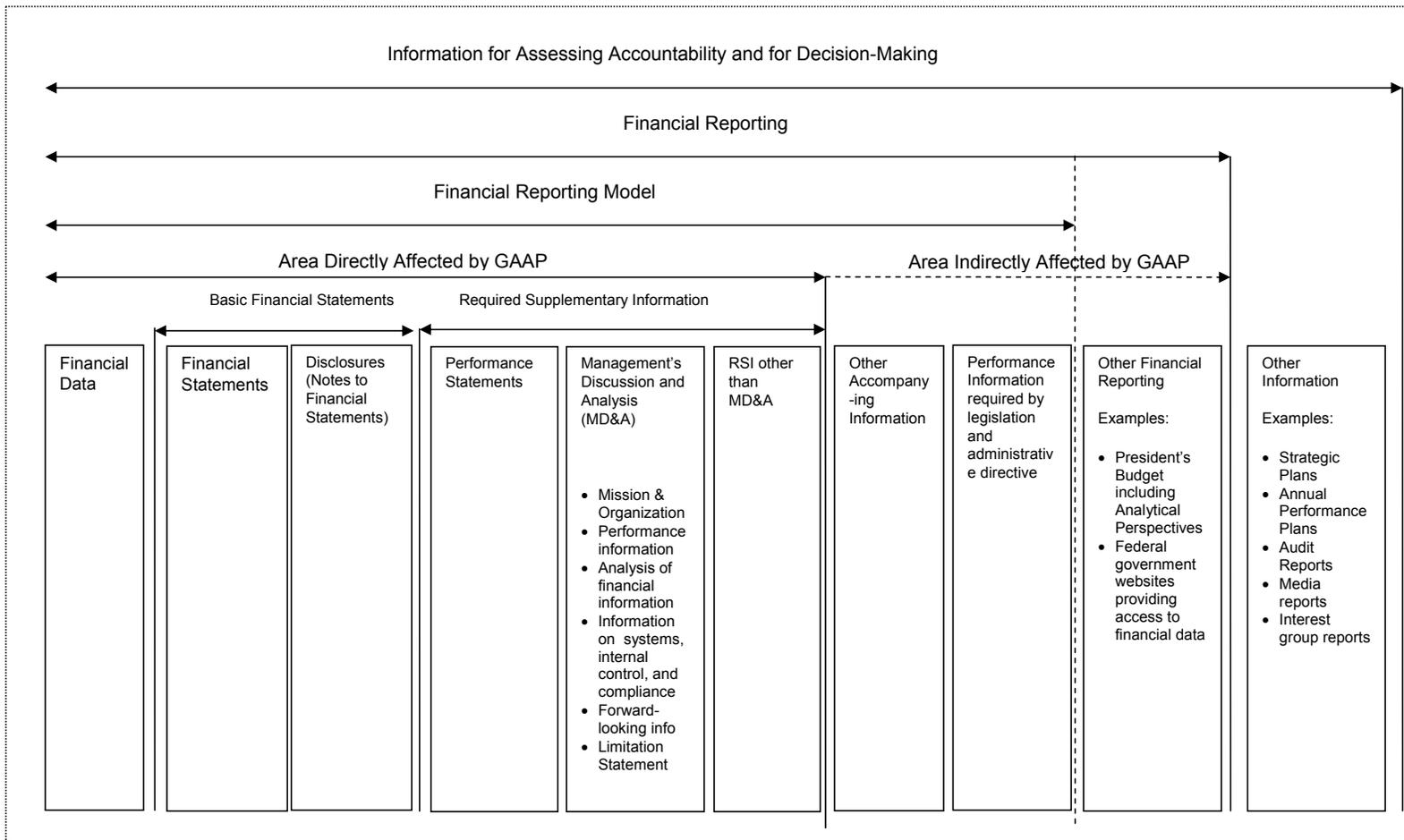


FIGURE 1: INFORMATION FOR ASSESSING ACCOUNTABILITY AND FOR DECISION-MAKING

~~40-35. Financial and other data useful for financial reporting may reside in a variety of systems often developed for specific purposes. Financial reporting systems that are interoperable~~ To enhance consistency, ~~aid~~void users' confusion, an' understanding, and ~~to~~ facilitate the sharing of information, ~~financial reporting systems should be interoperable.~~ In this context, interoperability refers to the ability for systems to exchange data and facilitate the use of the data without special effort on the part of the user. ~~Financial and other data useful for financial reporting may reside in a variety of systems often developed for specific purposes.~~ Interoperability provides a means of sharing or aggregating comparable data from these different systems and streamlines the reporting of useful information. Thus, interoperability permits the creation of useful reports, ~~whether GAAP or non-GAAP,~~ regardless of the source.

~~41-36.~~ A common set of criteria facilitates financial system interoperability. Users seek information that may require the aggregation of data recorded by different systems across federal entities. Uniform criteria helps ensure that the data can be properly understood, shared, and used. At a minimum, to support interoperability, publicly available financial reporting sources should:

- a. Rely on consistent and uniform terminology for concepts, practices, and techniques (SFFAS 4, par. 26) by adopting common data elements as well as recognition and measurement requirements to the extent practicable.
- b. Adopt consistent approaches to aggregating data by reporting entity, responsibility segment, strategic goals, program activity, programs, and/or recipients.
- c. Draw cost information developed for different purposes from a common data source<sup>10</sup> and support its reconciliation to other sources. (SFFAS 4, page 13 – text box and par. 41-44.).
- d. Identify the basis of accounting to aid users and provide a common access point for all financial reports.

## REPORTING BY GOVERNMENT-WIDE AND COMPONENT REPORTING ENTITIES

---

37. There are two levels of organizations for which financial information needs to be reported: the government-wide and component levels. Because the two levels have potentially different users and uses for their financial statements as well as different structures, roles, and financing, their financial reporting needs to be different. Both levels of reporting should

---

<sup>10</sup>The common data source may include different kinds of data – financial and non-financial – and “data source” is not meant to imply a computerized system. Rather it is used in a broad way to include many sources. The key is that the sources be clearly defined, heavily rely on the system of record, and have integrity.

include information to explain how they relate to each other their relationships and differences.

42.

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0.31", No bullets or numbering

## THE GOVERNMENT-WIDE REPORTING ENTITY

*The objective of the government-wide financial report that includes financial statements, disclosures, and RSI is to ~~answer broad financial questions and help citizens and citizen intermediaries understand the financial condition of the federal government and how that changed during the year being reported; the sources of revenue and major services that the federal government provides; and facilitate their obtaining detailed information.~~*

43-38. The Constitution established the structure of the federal government; that is the three branches of government and their roles. The Legislative branch consists of the Congress and is responsible for making laws, controlling tax and spending policies, regulating interstate and foreign commerce, and declaring war. The Judicial branch consists of the U.S. Supreme Court and is responsible for evaluating laws. The Executive branch consists of the President and various departments and agencies and is responsible for executing laws. Each of the three branches has a role in the basic decisions that describe the intent of government and the actions that give force to those decisions. It is through the Executive Branch and its components that the federal government provides most services and acts to finance those services through the means established in law.

44-39. The federal government is responsible for the nation's defense and general welfare and accordingly provides diverse services, such as: military forces to deter war and protect the nation; guaranteed or direct loans to enable persons to own their own homes for housing; assistance to persons adversely affected by natural disaster relief; grants to improve state and local education systems; assistance to assure a robust agricultural economy and other needs; insurance of bank deposit insurances; and economic assistance to the unemployed, elderly, and disabled; agriculture and food research; and numerous others.

45-40. The federal government has unique capabilities to finance the services provided and accomplish its objectives. It has the power to levy taxes, charge fees, and borrow.

46. Also, the federal government may accomplish its objectives without outlaying funds. For example, to encourage home ownership and stimulate residential construction, the federal government may approve tax provisions that reduce the tax liability for taxpayers that who have to incur the costs associated with mortgage interest and local property taxes. meet particular criteria. In addition, the federal government may not tax certain activities, thereby creating incentives for individuals to engage in activities that may invest in certain assets.

41.

47-42. The federal government can continue to provide services even when the cost of providing those services exceeds the amount of revenues received. Also, there is limited competitive market constraint on the number and types of services that the government can provide. The se unique responsibilities and powers of the federal government mean it

operates with fewer restraints than other entities ~~which~~ and elevates the important role financial reporting.<sup>11</sup>

~~48-43. However, the federal government is vulnerable to long-term financial pressures that create financial risks. Such pressures may include demographic, economic, and environmental trends. For example, the aging of the nation's citizens over the long term may significantly increase the need for health care services and support for retirees. This in turn will result in nt services and require additional costs in the future. These increased costs may occur at a time when citizens also expect the federal government to provide the routine services and meet its obligations such as interest payments on debt, and possibly respond to major disasters or disaster assistance, stimulate a stagnant economy, and meet its obligations such as interest payments on debt.~~

~~49. In addition to the government's vulnerability to long-term pressures, citizens may expect the federal government to respond to a crisis and provide assistance. For instance, in response to the financial crisis in 2008, the federal government provided temporary assistance to government-sponsored enterprises. However, the enterprises were not specifically backed by the federal government.~~

~~50. Given the federal government's unique financing capabilities and long-term and crisis-related risk exposures, conventional measures of net income and cumulative earnings are not adequate measures of the value of the government's services and performance.~~

~~51-44. Financial report users such as the Congress expect highly aggregated information to address and plan for long-term financial and programmatic operations and sustainability of the government. This expectation indicates the need for a consolidated report that aggregates distinct government functions operations, the government-wide reporting entity level.~~

~~52-45. The government-wide reporting entity level presents the economic aspects of the government as a whole and all its revenues and costs. This highly aggregated reporting level reflects the federal government's power to tax, charge fees, and borrow to finance the cost of services already provided and invest in needed assets. The government-wide reporting entity also presents information needed to assess the federal government's ability to continue, both now and in the future, current policy. In particular, information should be provided to help users assess whether the federal government can continue current policy without change regarding public services and taxation, and without causing debt to rise continuously as a share of gross domestic product (GDP).~~

~~53-46. Given the operations of the government-wide level, information useful for demonstrating its accountability and decision-making may should include :~~

- ~~a. Revenues —. Uinformation sers expect to understand the sources and amounts of taxes and other revenue received.~~
- ~~b. Expenditures —. —Users expect information on how taxes were used.~~

<sup>11</sup> SFFAC 1, par. 49. See also par. 50-70 for a more detailed discussion of the federal government.

- c. ~~Costs – information about – Users expect information on the~~ how resources were used.
- d. Overall results of operations ~~– information about – Users expect a comprehensive perspective of the government’s net result~~ costs, including the costs that are financed by reducing tax revenues.
- e. Tax Expenditures ~~– Users expect – a comprehensive perspective of the government’s services, including information about the taxes the government has foregone in lieu of having to pay for services directly~~ services that reduce the tax liability for taxpayers engaging in certain activities.
- f. Financial Position ~~– Users expect~~ information that helps them identify the resources of the government and the claims against those resources as of the reporting date.
- g. Budgetary Legislation ~~– Users expect~~ information that helps to understand the legislative processes for determining the level of resources to raise from taxes, how the budget resources will be used, and the different measures that may be used to control funds.
- h. Sustainability of services ~~– Users expect~~ information to assess whether the level of future budgetary resources will likely be sufficient needed to sustain public services required by law and policy and to meet obligations as they come. –

~~54.47~~ Government-wide report users are primarily also concerned about the government’s financial condition ~~or the probability that the government will be able to meet its obligations as they become due and provide programs and services currently and in the future. – Users need~~ They expect financial reports to provide information that would assist them in understanding whether the federal government’s financial condition has improved or deteriorated. ~~Also, users are concerned about the results of the services provided each year.~~ They understand that the federal government’s financial condition has implications on the nation’s well-being and vice versa.<sup>12</sup> ~~In addition, users are concerned about the results and accomplishments of the services provided each year.~~

~~55.48~~ Government-wide financial reports that include financial statements, disclosures, and RSI ~~ing~~ should present the trends relevant to assessing the government’s financial condition. In particular, financial statements and disclosures should assist report users in:

- a. understanding the government’s financial condition at the end of the reporting period and how it changed from previous periods;
- b. understanding the different sources of financing the cost of services now and in the future; and
- c. understanding the cost of services now and in the future.

<sup>12</sup> SFFAC 1, par. 236.

~~e.;~~

~~d. finding relevant information on the nation's economy; and~~

~~e. finding relevant information on the government's accomplishments.~~

~~49. Also, to assess financial condition, users may need information on the nation's economy and the government's performance. Accordingly financial reports that include financial statements, disclosures, and RSI should include information to assist users in:~~

~~a. finding relevant information on the nation's economy; and~~

~~b. finding relevant information on the government's accomplishments.~~

~~50. Government services are provided through the components. The government-wide financial statements, disclosures, and RSI provide information about the entire government and could be used to help users locate financial information for the components.~~

~~56. The government-wide financial reporting level that includes financial statements, disclosures, and RSI should also assist readers in understanding that the federal government engages multiple organizations—including state and local governments, nonprofits, and the private sector partners—in delivering services and the organizations frequently provide related services. The public is not always aware of the organizations involved in providing services and generally focuses on the services that impact them.~~

~~57-51. Government services are provided through the components. The government wide financial statements provide information about the entire government and could be used to help users locate financial information for the components.~~

## THE COMPONENT REPORTING ENTITY

*The objective of component entity reports that include financial statements, disclosures, and RSI is to provide users with financial and non-financial performance information about the services that the individual components provide.*

~~58-52. Component reporting entities receive authority by delegations through appropriations made in the legislative and regulatory process. Their missions and reporting requirements are established in various laws enacted over time resulting in a complex network of operations and services. Components across the federal government are diverse and the scope and nature of each component's activities can be diverse and at times overlap.~~

~~59-53. Some components can be considered operating components and others central components. Operating components primarily provide services to the public while central components generally provide services to the government as a whole and some components are both operating and central. For example, as an operating and central component, the Department of the Treasury collects the revenue for the federal government and operates regulatory programs. It also enables components to provide services by issuing their payments for most agencies; operates financial and regulatory programs, and it prepares and presents government-wide financial information.~~

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0.06", Hanging: 0.25", No bullets or numbering

~~60-54.~~ A single component could have several sub-components that provide several distinct services and each service could have a discrete set of stakeholders. For example, a single component could be responsible for providing direct regulatory responsibility, respond to the release of hazardous materials, provide grants for ~~the~~ construction projects, and provide direct loans. Each of these services could have a unique group of stakeholders interested in the ~~services-program's~~ activities.

~~61-55. Different components can provide similar services across government.~~ Various laws enacted over time contribute to various components having responsibility for similar services. For instance, ~~numerous laws govern the nation's food safety services and 15 federal entities collectively administer the effort.~~<sup>13</sup> ~~Also,~~ multiple departments have multiple services to support ~~service members, veterans, and civilians individuals~~ with serious mental illness.

~~62-56.~~ To control the resources of individual components and ultimately the federal government as a whole, Congress determines whether components begin, continue, or terminate specific services and, where appropriate, collect revenues, ~~and incur obligations, and pay obligations.~~

~~63-57.~~ Components typically are not provided with cash to operate and provide services. Instead, Congress engages in different legislative processes to provide components with budget authority or the authority to incur financial obligations that will result in spending. Component entities generally may not spend more than Congress has provided and may only use funds for the purposes specified in ~~the~~ legislation. The legislative process can involve a single phase or two phases, depending on whether the ~~service spending~~ is mandatory or discretionary.

~~64.~~ For mandatory ~~services spending~~ the authorizing legislation provides budget authority ~~and . These services include entitlement services such as Medicare and Medicaid, Social Security, Veterans Benefits, Federal Employee Retirement, and others.~~

~~65-58.~~ For ~~discretionary spending services~~, Congress (1) authorizes the service and (2) provides appropriations or the authority to incur obligations for specific purposes. An appropriation can be limited to a single year, multiple years, or be available indefinitely.

~~59.~~ A single component may receive mandatory or discretionary funding or both.

~~60. Components are stewards over the funding provided and have a legal responsibility to: establish and maintain financial management systems; and to evaluate and report on their systems of internal accounting and administrative control.~~

~~66.~~

~~67. Components are stewards over the funding provided and have a legal responsibility to: establish and maintain financial management systems; and to evaluate and report on their systems of internal accounting and administrative control.~~

---

<sup>13</sup> Government Accountability Office—2015 High Risk Report

~~68. Citizens interested in greater detail will be served by component level reports.~~

~~69. Reports about specific components may be of greater interest to internal users such as Congress, appointed officials, senior executives, and others with oversight responsibilities. Congress expects highly disaggregated information to address short term financial and programmatic operations of the government. Also, component reports may be of interest to users in the component's field. For instance, educators may be interested in the Department of Education's financial report, and environmentalists may be interested in the Environmental Protection Agency's financial report.~~

~~70. Some individual component financial reports cannot inform a reader about activity across multiple component levels. For example, multiple operating components may perform activities to protect the nation's food supply. However, each component may only provide information on its own activities.~~

~~61. To demonstrate their accountability, components define their strategic goals and establish programs that enable them to achieve those strategic goals. Also, components use their funding to provide the programs and services.~~

~~71-62. Component entity reports serve users that need less aggregated information than reports about the government as a whole. Users need disaggregated information to assess spending in relation to appropriations, unspent appropriations, the cost of services, and whether programs are meeting expectations.~~

~~72-63. In light of the reporting objectives, component level reports that include financial statements, disclosures, and RSI ~~ing may should~~ help inform users regarding a component's:~~

- ~~a. different sources and amount of funding;~~
- ~~b. use of funding for specific goals or services;~~
- ~~c. net cost of services;~~
- ~~d. total-gross cost of services;~~
- ~~e-e. spending in relation to the budget;~~
- ~~d-f. status of resources (assets) available to provide future services and obligations (liabilities) that must be met in the future; and~~
- ~~e-g. accomplishments -or performance information.~~

~~64. Also, users need information to understand when component entity services contribute to cross-entity initiatives. For example, multiple operating components may perform activities to assist service members, veterans, and civilians with a mental illness. Accordingly, individual component financial reports that include financial statements, disclosures, and RSI should help users locate information about related services performed by other components.~~

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0.06", Hanging: 0.25", No bullets or numbering

~~73-65.~~ Due to the diversity of federal services it is challenging for individuals to evaluate and influence policies and actions of the federal government.<sup>14</sup> SFFAC 1 ~~state, par. 59 states,~~ “As a result, most elected and appointed federal officials, and the groups to which they are responsive, have been interested primarily in information about individual government programs, functions, or activities.”<sup>15</sup>

~~As a result, most elected and appointed federal officials, and the groups to which they are responsive, have been interested primarily in information about individual government programs, functions, or activities. They have been less interested in information about the government as a whole and even less concerned about intermediate levels of reporting, such as individual departments.~~

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0.06", Hanging: 0.25"

~~74-66.~~ Also, users ~~may be more~~are concerned ~~more~~ about the purposes for which costs were incurred and less about how the organization is managed. Component level financial reports that include financial statements, disclosures, and RSI may help inform users of the major services provided and their costs. To do so, disaggregated information ~~must be provided~~may be needed and such financial reports can provide a starting point for disaggregation.

~~75-67.~~ In addition, component financial reports ~~-that include financial statements, disclosures, and RSI~~ should strive to disaggregate cost information in a way that is meaningful to users. ~~However, financial reports cannot provide adequate disaggregation for all users. Greater disaggregation may be provided by leveraging technology. Also, co~~Consistent definitions of cost should be used because users may compare cost within and across components and consistent definitions are essential to such comparisons.

## BUDGETARY INFORMATION

*Budgetary information is helpful-necessary for demonstrating compliance with budgetary legislation. Users expect to assess how-well-whether the government adhered to legislation regarding the acquisition and use of resources. Also, an explanation of basic federal budget concepts and processes may provide the context relevant to their assessment.*

68. The majority of federal spending is not subject to an annual appropriations process. Congress primarily provides budget authority in laws other than appropriations acts. Annual appropriations acts only fund about one-third of total spending while authorizing legislation controls the remainder.<sup>16</sup> Authorizing legislation can provide reporting entities with the authority or requirement to spend without requiring the Congressional Appropriation

<sup>14</sup> SFFAC 1, par.58.

<sup>15</sup> SFFAC 1, par.59.

<sup>16</sup> Office of Management and Budget, Analytical Perspectives, Budget of the U.S. Government, FY 2016, p.93.

Committees to enact funding.<sup>17</sup> Even so, accountability is needed over the budget regardless of the spending authority.

69. The federal budget provides a system for controlling expenditures and information for assessing the government's effect on the economy.<sup>18</sup> It also presents the level of public services that the government provides.<sup>19</sup>

70. Federal financial systems integrate budgetary and accrual basis data on transactions. Systems include terms for items and concepts specific to federal budgeting and may require explanation. For instance, systems include items such as budget authority, obligations, and outlays. These items are integrated with other budget data and accrual basis data such as revenue, expenses, assets, and liabilities. As a result, the systems maintain information about different stages of a federal transaction.<sup>20</sup>

71. In developing budget legislation, Congress decides on targets for: spending and receipts; the amount of the deficit or surplus; and the limit on debt. Upon determining the targets, Congress provides component entities with budget authority and enacts changes in laws affecting receipts and spending.<sup>21</sup> If they determine that additional authority is needed due to unforeseen circumstances, a supplemental appropriation may be enacted.

72. The forms of budget authority include:

- a. Appropriations - Provided in appropriations acts or authorizing laws, permit agencies to incur obligations and make payment;
- b. Borrowing Authority - Usually provided in permanent laws, permits agencies to incur obligations but requires them to borrow funds, usually from the general fund of the Treasury;
- c. Contract Authority - Usually provided in permanent law, permits agencies to incur obligations in advance of a separate appropriation of the cash for payment or in anticipation of the collection of receipts that can be used for payment; and
- d. Spending Authority from Offsetting Collections - Usually provided in permanent law, permits agencies to credit offsetting collections to an expenditure account, incur obligations, and make payment using the offsetting collections.<sup>22</sup> Offsetting collections are deductions from spending to reflect the government's net transactions with the public. They may result from business-like transactions with the public, intragovernmental transactions, voluntary gifts and donations, and offsetting governmental transactions or collections from the public that are governmental in nature such as tax receipts.<sup>23</sup>

---

<sup>17</sup> Analytical Perspectives p.93.

<sup>18</sup> SFFAC 2, par. 67.

<sup>19</sup> Analytical Perspectives p.115.

<sup>20</sup> SFFAC 1, par. 176.

<sup>21</sup> Analytical Perspectives p.92.

<sup>22</sup> Analytical Perspectives pp.102-103.

<sup>23</sup> Analytical Perspectives pp. 99-100.

~~73. Upon receiving their budget authority, component entities incur obligations to purchase goods or services. For example, an obligation is considered incurred when the component enters into a contract. When components make payments to liquidate the obligation, an outlay is recorded and outlays are the measure of government spending.<sup>24</sup>~~

~~74. Also, budget authority is not always obligated or spent during a single year. Budgetary reporting tracks the cash outlay implied at the time a decision is made. Outlays may liquidate obligations incurred in previous years and obligations may be incurred against unobligated budget authority provided in prior years. As a result, outlays flow from current and prior period budget authority.~~

~~76-75. Users expect components to explain its plans for future periods including its resource requirements, the services it expects to deliver, and the level of resources it expects to use to deliver those services.~~

~~77. Taxes are the primary source of revenues for the delivery of government services and taxpayers expect to compare the actual level of revenue and expenses with the amounts estimated to determine how well the government adhered to its estimates and the legislation.~~

~~78-76. In addition, federal managers ~~need~~expect to monitor adherence to budgetary legislation. They ~~constantly expect to~~compare their budgetary resources with obligations ~~and outlays~~.~~

~~79-77. Also, users expect to assess whether the resources obtained have been used in accordance with legislation that establishes the government's budget.~~

~~80-78. Providing information that would assist users in determining how well the government adhered to estimates and the government's adherence to legislation regarding the use of budgetary resources is significant to demonstrating accountability.~~

~~79. Also, discussing the distinction between mandatory and discretionary spending, the federal budget execution process, and basic federal budgeting concepts in financial reports ~~that include financial statements, disclosures, and RSI~~ may be helpful to users. This information may help users understand the different elements involved in depicting budgetary aspects of transactions and how they relate to elements depicting accrual basis aspects in financial statements. In addition, users would need to understand basic federal budgeting concepts and processes to determine how to conduct their analysis of budgetary information.~~

~~80. Although budgetary information is important of addressing users' needs, FASAB considers the budgetary integrity objective to be a secondary focus objective. The Board's authority does not extend to budgetary measurement and recognition standards. This condition, to a degree, limits the Board's comparative advantage in this area.~~

~~81. The Board's focus is on providing information to support budget planning and formulation and efforts to ensure the accuracy and reliability of the budget. SFFAC 1, paragraph 190 states,~~

<sup>24</sup> ~~Analytical Perspectives pp.103.~~

~~84. The Board's authority does not extend to recommending budgetary standards or budgetary concepts, but the Board is committed to providing reliable accounting information that supports budget planning and formulation. The Board also supports efforts to ensure the accuracy and reliability of reporting on the budget.~~

**Formatted:** Indent: Left: 1", No bullets or numbering

#### ~~BASIC CONCEPTS TO CONSIDER~~

**Formatted:** Indent: Left: 0.06", Hanging: 0.25"

~~82. The majority of federal spending is not subject to an annual appropriations process. Congress primarily provides budget authority in laws other than appropriations acts. Annual appropriations acts only fund about one-third of total spending while authorizing legislation controls the remainder.<sup>25</sup> Authorizing legislation can provide reporting entities with the authority or requirement to spend without requiring the Congressional Appropriation Committees to enact funding.<sup>26</sup>~~

~~83. The federal budget provides a system for controlling expenditures and information for assessing the government's effect on the economy.<sup>27</sup> It also presents the level of public services that the government provides.<sup>28</sup>~~

~~84. Federal financial systems integrate budgetary and accrual basis data on transactions. Systems include terms for items and concepts specific to federal budgeting and may require explanation. For instance, systems include items such as budget authority, obligations, and outlays. These items are integrated with other budget data and accrual basis data such as revenue, expenses, assets, and liabilities. As a result, the systems maintain information about different stages of a federal transaction.<sup>29</sup>~~

~~85. Budgetary measurement is intended to help in controlling and allocating resources and reflects the cash outlay implied at the time a decision is made.<sup>30</sup>~~

~~86. The budget classifies budget authority and spending as discretionary or mandatory to measure the extent of spending actually controlled through the appropriation process. Discretionary budget authority is generally provided through annual appropriations. Mandatory budget authority is available to programs for which the authorizing legislation entitles beneficiaries—persons, households, or other levels of government—to receive payment, or otherwise legally obligates the Government to make payment and thereby effectively determines the amount of budget authority required, even though the payments are funded by a subsequent appropriation.<sup>31</sup>~~

~~87. While this distinction between mandatory and discretionary is commonly used, the substance relates primarily to frequency with which authority is provided and evaluated. For~~

<sup>25</sup> Office of Management and Budget, Analytical Perspectives, Budget of the U.S. Government, FY 2016, p. 93.

<sup>26</sup> Analytical Perspectives p. 93.

<sup>27</sup> SFFAC 2, par. 67.

<sup>28</sup> Analytical Perspectives p. 115.

<sup>29</sup> SFFAC 1, par. 176.

<sup>30</sup> SFFAC 1, par. 189.

<sup>31</sup> Analytical Perspectives, pp. 103.

example, an “entitlement” can be provided through an annual appropriation that is renewed each year and an existing “permanent” entitlement can be rescinded by new laws at any time.

88. Congress decides on targets for: spending and receipts; the amount of the deficit or surplus; and the limit on debt. Upon determining the targets, Congress provides component entities with budget authority and enacts changes in laws affecting receipts and spending.<sup>32</sup> If they determine that additional authority is needed due to unforeseen circumstances, Congress may enact a supplemental appropriation.

89. The forms of budget authority include:

- a. Appropriations—Provided in appropriations acts or authorizing laws, permit agencies to incur obligations and make payment;
- b. Borrowing Authority—Usually provided in permanent laws, permits agencies to incur obligations but requires them to borrow funds, usually from the general fund of the Treasury;
- c. Contract Authority—Usually provided in permanent law, permits agencies to incur obligations in advance of a separate appropriation of the cash for payment or in anticipation of the collection of receipts that can be used for payment; and
- d. Spending Authority from Offsetting Collections—Usually provided in permanent law, permits agencies to credit offsetting collections to an expenditure account, incur obligations, and make payment using the offsetting collections.<sup>33</sup> Offsetting collections are deductions from spending to reflect the government’s net transactions with the public. They may result from business-like transactions with the public, intragovernmental transactions, voluntary gifts and donations, and offsetting governmental transactions or collections from the public that are governmental in nature such as tax receipts.<sup>34</sup>

90. Upon receiving their budget authority, component entities incur obligations to purchase goods or services. For example, an obligation is considered incurred when the component enters into a contract. When components make payments to liquidate the obligation, an outlay is recorded and outlays are the measure of government spending.<sup>35</sup>

—Also, budget authority is not always obligated or spent during a single year. Outlays may liquidate obligations incurred in previous years and obligations may be incurred against unobligated budget authority provided in prior years. As a result, outlays flow from current and prior period budget authority.

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0.06"

Formatted: Outline numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: 1, 2, 3, ... + Start at: 1 + Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0.06" + Indent at: 0.31"

Formatted: Indent: Hanging: 0.25"

## PERFORMANCE INFORMATION

<sup>32</sup> Analytical Perspectives p.92.

<sup>33</sup> Analytical Perspectives pp.102-103.

<sup>34</sup> Analytical Perspectives pp. 99-100.

<sup>35</sup> Analytical Perspectives pp.103.

*The government has continuing responsibility for the nation's ~~common~~ defense and general welfare. This involves many goals and objectives and financial measures alone are not adequate to enable users to assess the government's operations. Consequently, performance information is needed to help users assess the results of using financial resources; that is, the efficiency and effectiveness of the government's services. Performance reporting requires both financial and non-financial information to be most useful.*

~~91-82.~~ The federal government provides a broad range of services and has a responsibility to account for and explain the results of the use of the resources obtained. Users expect ~~expect~~ to assess whether resources have been used efficiently and effectively and financial and other quantifiable measures provide relevant information for their assessment. ~~For instance, if~~ information on both the cost and quantity of services provided can contribute to assessing the efficiency of the services delivered.

~~83.~~ Also, ~~in some instances,~~ the government's performance ~~may is~~ be communicated by an explaining ~~ingation of~~ the quality of the services or the service's outcome.

~~92-84.~~ For example, quantifiable units of outputs may be less identifiable for services reporting ~~entities~~ with regulatory or policy-oriented goals. Consequently, an explanation of what was planned to be achieved and the actual progress may inform users.

~~93-85.~~ Presenting non-financial performance information in financial reports that include financial statements, disclosures, and RSI ~~provides context and~~ helps users understand ~~why the~~ results achieved for the ~~costs reported in the financial statements were~~ incurred ~~and the consequences of doing so.~~

~~94-86.~~ Performance measures that may be helpful to present in financial reports that include financial statements, disclosures, and RSI ~~are as follows~~ include:

- a. Input – the amount of non-financial resources put into a service.
- b. Output - the quantity of a service or product provided.
- c. Outcome - the accomplishments or results that occurred because of the service.
- d. Efficiency - relate inputs to outputs of services, measuring the cost per unit of output.
- e. Effectiveness - relate inputs to the outcomes or results of services, measuring the cost per unit of outcome or result.

~~95-87.~~ In addition, presenting multiple periods of performance information helps users identify long-term trends. Trend information can be helpful for demonstrating improving or declining performance and for evaluating services and planning future services.

~~88.~~ Also, including explanations with the performance information may help users understand the reported performance measures and the factors that impact the reported performance. Explanations may include: external factors affecting results, such as the environment,

economy, and social conditions; ~~and~~ internal factors affecting results, such as funding levels, legal requirements; ~~significance of results~~; ~~explanations~~ of trends; ~~reasons why the results did not achieve the target and plans for achieving the target~~; and reasons for significantly exceeding the target.

89. FASAB considers the operating performance objective to be a primary focus objective. The Board has an opportunity to play a direct role in developing standards to achieve the objective and the objective relates to integrating cost information derived from accrual accounting with performance information.

96-

## COST ACCOUNTING

---

*Cost accounting is important for reporting on the performance of the government's services. Citizen ~~user needs include~~ ~~expect~~ information on the cost of services and the efficiency and ~~cost~~-effectiveness of delivering them. Also, comparing cost to the performance of services can be useful to managers when choosing among alternative actions and for formulating their budget proposals. Consequently, cost information can be beneficial for all user groups, internal and external.*

97-90. The cost of services and how well the government manages its resources is a significant concern of users. Increasing costs and inefficient use of resources may lead to increased national debt and ~~the potential for tax increases~~ ~~affect fiscal sustainability~~. Consequently, the cost of ~~current~~ services in the current period and their results and their results is relevant to decisions about future services.

98-91. Reporting costs in the proper period is important for assessing the government's performance. Information relevant to assessing the government's performance includes comparing the resources consumed with the services provided during the reporting period. Accordingly, costs must be recorded in the same period that the costs were incurred.

## SUMMARY REPORTING

---

*Summary reports can be a helpful tool for demonstrating accountability and communicating financial and performance information to citizens.*

99-92. Citizens expect brief, understandable information. The use of charts and graphs to depict information may assist them in developing an understanding of the entity's finances and operating performance. Also, with references or links to additional information such as the government-wide or component entity financial reports that include financial

[statements, disclosures, and RSI](#), they can ~~readily~~ access more detail should items of interest develop.

400-93. \_\_\_\_\_ [Placeholder for additional guidance]

## APPENDIX A: BASIS FOR CONCLUSIONS

This appendix discusses some factors considered significant by Board members in reaching the conclusions in this Statement. It includes the reasons for accepting certain approaches and rejecting others. Individual members gave greater weight to some factors than to others. The standards enunciated in this Statement—not the material in this appendix—should govern the accounting for specific transactions, events, or conditions.

### PROJECT HISTORY

A1. This project is a part of the Board's conceptual framework initiative. After several years of progress in federal financial reporting, FASAB decided to revisit its conceptual framework with a focus on ensuring that accounting standards are based on a sound framework of objectives and concepts. At that time, Board members were concerned that the reporting objectives were broad and some members sought to better determine the role of GAAP-based financial statements in achieving them. Accordingly, the Board began the conceptual framework initiative by revisiting the reporting objectives and engaging the federal reporting community in the discussions.

#### User Needs and Reporting Community Outreach

A2. FASAB staff conducted a series of roundtable discussions to determine whether the objectives remained valid and appropriate and to help define the role of the Board in achieving them. Roundtable participants provided views on whether the objectives continued to reflect the information needs of users and whether they are being achieved. The participants believed the reporting objectives remained valid and they noted that the objectives could be accomplished by reports and similar materials other than financial statements. Consequently, in 2006, the Board agreed to retain the broad objectives and issue its Strategic Directions report that discusses the Board's primary and secondary focuses relative to the reporting objectives.

A3. Next, the Board began discussing the need for conceptual guidance that describes the reporting model and how it relates to the reporting objectives. The concepts would guide the Board in determining the financial statements necessary for achieving the reporting objectives and help focus on "what should be" versus "what is." The former would ensure that the objectives are adequately addressed and the statements are useful to readers. Also, members were concerned about whether a relationship should exist among financial statements, such as the balance sheet and a statement of net cost, and how the model compares with other reporting models. As a result, staff began researching the diverse needs of users and how they access information; surveying other countries and their reporting models; and conducting discussions with preparers, citizen intermediaries, congressional staff, program managers, executives, auditors, state and local government planners and analysts, and experts in federal financial reporting.

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0", Hanging: 0.5", Space After: 6 pt

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0.5", No bullets or numbering

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0", Hanging: 0.5"

A4. Meanwhile, the Board continued its deliberations on social insurance and long term sustainability reporting, projects that would significantly impact the existing reporting model and raise conceptual questions that should be addressed in the conceptual framework initiative. Board members discussed conceptual issues such as the purpose of the balance sheet and its elements and eventually the Board determined that the conceptual framework needed to better explain unique accounting issues such as why:

- a. the power to tax is not an asset but nonetheless is relevant to assessing the sustainability or the financial condition of the federal government;
- b. current deficits are indeed bad and have short and long-term implications;
- c. the timing of a cash flow problem is important; and
- d. the point estimates on the balance sheet have limitations for assessing financial condition.

A5. Accordingly, the Board decided to consider these and other reporting concepts in the reporting model project.

A6. FASAB staff completed the users' needs and reporting model research and provided the Board with a series of reports and discussion papers. In summary, staff noted that users needed information regarding:

- a. The cost of programs.
- b. The performance of programs
- c. The sustainability of programs
- d. How actual spending compared to the budget

A7. Also, users needed plain-language, understandable information, and the ability to access information and prepare their own reports.

Task Forces and Additional Research

A8. The Board organized the Reporting Model Task Force to consider the user needs and reporting community results and provide suggestions for the reporting model. In 2010, the task force completed its work and presented recommendations to enhance the reporting model. In general, the task force focused on what could be accomplished in the near term and on the Financial Report of the U.S. Government (CFR) because the public would likely start with the CFR to learn about the fiscal health of the federal government. Consequently, they recommended the adoption of a centralized, web-based method of reporting financial and performance information, recommended changes to particular financial statements, and recommended additional disclosures. They believed that the success of these recommendations require raising public awareness of federal financial reporting.

Formatted: Numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: a, b, c, ... + Start at: 1 + Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0.75" + Indent at: 1"

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0", Hanging: 0.5"

Formatted: Numbered + Level: 1 + Numbering Style: a, b, c, ... + Start at: 1 + Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0.75" + Indent at: 1"

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0", Hanging: 0.5"

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0.5", No bullets or numbering

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0", Hanging: 0.5"

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0.5", No bullets or numbering

A9. In 2011, the Board discussed the task force recommendations and members discussed systems constraints and challenges and noted that many of the recommendations could be adopted voluntarily by preparers. However, members did note that the conceptual framework that should guide accounting standards remained incomplete and not current. Also, at that time, the Board discussed its priorities and plans and revisited its Strategic Directions report. The Board reaffirmed its conclusions in the Strategic Directions report and noted factors that would likely influence federal financial reporting. Those factors included the notion that citizens and citizen intermediaries are the primary audience for the CFR, which implies that FASAB standards should focus on the CFR and should primarily consider citizens' information needs. Additionally, the factor implies that component entity reports should support the needs identified for the CFR.

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0", Hanging: 0.5"

A10. Later in 2011, the Board discussed the report, The Chief Financial Officers Act of 1990 – 20 Years Later: Report to the Congress and the Comptroller General (CFO Act Report). The report recommended that Congress consider directing FASAB, the Office of Management and Budget (OMB), and the Government Accountability Office (GAO) to evolve the financial reporting model. Consequently, the Board decided to review the reporting model of component entities and conduct discussions with CFOs and various groups to help the Board determine the information of value to users.

Formatted: Space After: 10 pt

A11. Also, other countries were reporting on service performance as well as financial performance. Given the range of issues, the Board decided that the project needed to be segmented into three separate projects – improving cost, performance, and budgetary reporting – and task forces would be organized for each project. This approach would allow members to better focus on issues that needed to be addressed.

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0.06", Hanging: 0.44"

A12. In 2012, the three task forces proceeded to discuss issues and subsequently recommended that the Board revisit SFFAS 4, Managerial Cost Accounting Standards and Concepts. The task forces believed that adequate cost guidance is needed to support users of budget and performance information and provide cost information that meets the expectations of financial information users. Upon reviewing the task force results, the Board determined that the recommended project would involve matters outside of the Board's domain and would require coordination with the OMB and the Department of the Treasury. Also, members again raised concerns about systems constraints and challenges in presenting integrated cost, budget, and performance information.

#### Developing Ideal Reporting Models without Constraints

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0.5", No bullets or numbering

A13. At this point, members noted that models of the ideal presentation are needed to serve as the end-goal for the project and help guide their direction. Also, given that raising concerns about existing systems and challenges directed the discussions away from "what should be," the Board determined that development of ideal models would not be constrained by considering existing systems and what the Board could accomplish immediately. In addition, the models will take a holistic view and consider the other conceptual issues discussed previously and include explanations on why the resulting construct should be considered ideal. Consequently, the Board decided to develop conceptual, ideal models that integrate budget, cost, and service performance information.

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0", Hanging: 0.5"

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0.5", No bullets or numbering

Flow Information: The Starting Point for Developing Ideal Models

A14. During the April 2014 meeting, FASAB members developed and presented their views of ideal reporting models. The presentations addressed the Budgetary Integrity objective, in general, and each of the sub-objectives of the Operating Performance objective. Also, with respect to the Stewardship objective, the Board decided to focus on the federal government as the entity rather than the nation's economy. In addition, in June, the Board decided not to revisit the reporting objectives or clarify the role of FASAB with respect to the objectives. Instead, the Board decided to begin developing the ideal reporting model by focusing on the flows and the flow statements that would help achieve the reporting objectives.

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0", Hanging: 0.5"

A15. Users needed to better understand flow information, such as costs and budgetary information, and how they relate. The Board would consider how cost and budgetary information should be disaggregated and address how to reconcile cost and budget at a level that would be understandable to users.

A16. However, members expressed concern about whether the concepts should include illustrations of financial statements and whether concepts should reflect an 'aspirational' reporting model or simply describe current practice. Consequently, the Board decided to: develop an inventory of concepts and topics that might be included in the concepts statement; and upon completing the inventory, deliberate which items should be retained in the concepts statement.

Inventory of Concepts

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0.5", No bullets or numbering

A17. In February 2015, the Board developed an inventory of concepts that would help guide development of the reporting models. The inventory included several topics, including: financial statements and the interrelationships among them and other reporting sources; the differences in information users need for government-wide versus component entity reporting; budgetary information; performance information; cost accounting; and summary reporting. Although the current conceptual framework discusses some features of these topics, the Board believed that specific objectives would help provide the information that users need. Also, the outline proposed a discussion on national indicators. However, the Board decided not to include this topic given that government policies do not always directly influence the indicators.

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0", Hanging: 0.5"

A1. Board developed the initial reporting models for government wide and component level reporting in the early 90s. The Board believed that users of government wide level reports primarily expect information to help them determine whether the government has been a proper steward. Accordingly, the government wide level model consisted of the following components:

Formatted: Indent: Left: -0.5"

- a. management's discussion and analysis;
- b. statement of financial position (commonly referred to as balance sheet);
- c. statement of net costs;
- d. statement of operations and changes in net position;
- e. reconciliation of net operating revenue (or cost) and unified budget surplus (or deficit);
- f. statement of changes in cash balance from unified budget and other activities;

Formatted: Indent: Left: -0.5", Hanging: 0.5"

- ~~g. comparison of budgeted and actual use of resources;~~
- ~~h. statement of program performance measures;~~
- ~~i. accompanying footnotes;~~
- ~~j. required supplementary information; and~~
- ~~k. other accompanying information.~~

~~A2. Later, the Board added the following to the government wide model:~~

- ~~a. statement of social insurance;~~
- ~~b. statement of changes in social insurance; and~~
- ~~c. long term fiscal projections for the U.S. Government.~~

~~A3. For component level reporting, the Board believed that aspects of each of the four reporting objectives should be achieved. Consequently, the initial component level model consisted of the following components:~~

- ~~a. management's discussion and analysis;~~
- ~~b. statement of financial position (commonly referred to as balance sheet);~~
- ~~c. statement of net costs;~~
- ~~d. statement of changes in net position;~~
- ~~e. statement of custodial activities, when appropriate;~~
- ~~f. statement of budgetary resources;~~
- ~~g. statement of financing;<sup>36</sup>~~
- ~~h. statement of program performance measures;<sup>37</sup>~~
- ~~i. accompanying footnotes;~~
- ~~j. required supplementary information; and~~
- ~~k. other accompanying information.~~

~~A4. Later, the Board added the following to the component level model:~~

- ~~a. statement of social insurance, when appropriate; and~~
- ~~b. statement of changes in social insurance.~~

~~A5. Also, the Board acknowledged that users expect information on component level programs. The Board noted that a component could consist of many dissimilar activities and the activities of a specific program or multiple programs are as important to users as information on the entire component. Hence, the Board expressed that components~~

<sup>36</sup> ~~Component entities could present the Statement of Financing as a financial statement or as a schedule in the disclosures.~~

<sup>37</sup> ~~FASAB has not developed standards to require the Statement of Program Performance Measures.~~

Formatted: Indent: Left: -0.5"

Formatted: Indent: Left: -0.5", Hanging: 0.5"

Formatted: Indent: Left: -0.5"

Formatted: Indent: Left: -0.5", Hanging: 0.5", Add space between paragraphs of the same style, Line spacing: Multiple 1.05 li

Formatted: Indent: Left: -0.5", Add space between paragraphs of the same style, Line spacing: Multiple 1.05 li

Formatted: Indent: Left: -0.5", Hanging: 0.5", Add space between paragraphs of the same style, Line spacing: Multiple 1.05 li

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0", Add space between paragraphs of the same style

Formatted: Indent: Left: 0.5", Add space between paragraphs of the same style

may, in some manner, provide information concerning programs in addition to information on the entire component.<sup>38</sup>

- A6.— However, the resulting model did not provide users with the different levels of aggregation being sought. The statements of net cost appeared to present strategic goals and highly aggregated information that may not be meaningful to citizens. Also, readers may have difficulty relating to department level strategic goals. They would need to review notes to understand the details that support the broad goal. Citizens may be more likely to understand cost by function.
- A7.— However, there are complexities involved in presenting data at that level as well. In particular, the function categories are broad and, in some cases, appear to overlap. For instance, Health and Medicare are separate functions but both appear to concern healthcare services.
- A8.— In addition, the Board noted that the budgetary integrity objective could be better achieved. Participants in roundtables and other discussions have noted that the statement of budgetary resources is challenging to understand and they noted that other possible presentations could be more useful, such as a schedule of spending or a budget to actual comparison.
- A9.— Also, the resulting government wide and component level models needed to better leverage technology. Although the models provided extensive information for users, constituents expressed concern about the length of the documents and technical language used. These features would require more use of their time to discern what is being reported and how the information might be used. They preferred to initially review brief depictions such as a single page summarizing the most important matters, charts, or graphs, and the depictions needed to be highly interactive, including links from one source to another and drill down capability.
- A10.— Moreover, users sought better integration of the budget and cost of services, and their results.
- A11.— Discuss the increasing desire for checkbook level reporting and the Data Act
- A12.— Include that the Government Performance and Results Act Modernization Act requires reporting multiple years of results

---

<sup>38</sup> SFFAC 2, Entity and Display, par. 75.

## APPENDIX B: ILLUSTRATIONS

~~THIS APPENDIX ILLUSTRATES THE APPLICATION OF THE PROVISIONS OF THIS STATEMENT TO ASSIST IN CLARIFYING THEIR MEANING. THE FACTS ASSUMED IN THESE EXAMPLES ARE ILLUSTRATIVE ONLY AND ARE NOT INTENDED TO MODIFY OR LIMIT THE REQUIREMENTS OF THIS STATEMENT OR TO INDICATE THE BOARD'S ENDORSEMENT OF THE SITUATIONS OR METHODS ILLUSTRATED. ADDITIONALLY, THESE ILLUSTRATIONS ARE NOT INTENDED TO PROVIDE GUIDANCE ON DETERMINING THE APPLICATION OF MATERIALITY. APPLICATION OF THE PROVISIONS OF THIS STATEMENT MAY REQUIRE ASSESSING FACTS AND CIRCUMSTANCES OTHER THAN THOSE ILLUSTRATED HERE AND REQUIRE REFERENCE TO OTHER APPLICABLE STANDARDS.~~

Formatted: Heading 1

## APPENDIX ~~CB~~: ABBREVIATIONS

---

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| <del>CFR</del> | <del>Consolidated f</del> inancial <del>r</del> eport of the U.S. government |
| ED             | Exposure draft   |
| FASAB          | Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board                                  |
| FASB           | Financial Accounting Standards Board   |
| GAAP           | Generally Accepted Accounting Principles                                     |
| GAO            | Government Accountability Office   |
| GASB           | Governmental Accounting Standards Board                                      |
| IPSASB         | International Public Sector Accounting Standards Board                       |
| OMB            | Office of Management and Budget  |
| SFAS           | Statement of Financial Accounting Standards (FASB)                           |
| SFFAC          | Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts                           |
| SFFAS          | Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Standards                          |

APPENDIX **DC**: GLOSSARY

---

---

# Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts 1: Objectives of Federal Financial Reporting

---

---

## Status

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>Issued</b>                                 | September 2, 1993  |
| <b>Interpretations and Technical Releases</b> |  |
| <b>Affects</b>                                | None.  |
| <b>Affected by</b>                            | SFFAC 3 affects paragraph 181 by providing guidance on MD&A. |

---

---

## Summary

This document is a conceptual statement on the objectives of financial reporting by the federal government. It focuses on the uses, user needs, and objectives of such reporting. The objectives are designed to guide the Board in developing accounting standards to enhance the financial information reported by the federal government to (1) demonstrate its accountability, (2) provide useful information, and (3) help internal users of financial information improve the government's management. In addition to guiding the Board, the objectives may serve as useful guidance to others involved in federal financial reporting. For example, the objectives may be useful in developing accounting policy, designing reports, and writing narratives and notes to financial reports.

The objectives reflect the federal environment. They also consider many of the needs expressed by current and potential users of federal financial information. They provide a framework for assessing the existing financial reporting systems of the federal government and for considering how new accounting standards might help to enhance accountability and decision-making in a cost-effective manner.

The four objectives of Federal Financial Reporting are:

Budgetary Integrity—Federal financial reporting should assist in fulfilling the government's duty to be publicly accountable for monies raised through taxes and other means and for their expenditure in accordance with the appropriations laws that establish the government's budget for a particular fiscal year and related laws and regulations. Federal financial reporting should provide information that helps the reader to determine

- how budgetary resources have been obtained and used and whether their acquisition and use were in accordance with the legal authorization,
- the status of budgetary resources, and
- how information on the use of budgetary resources relates to information on the costs of program operations and whether information on the status of budgetary resources is consistent with other accounting information on assets and liabilities.

---

Operating Performance—Federal financial reporting should assist report users in evaluating the service efforts, costs, and accomplishments of the reporting entity; the manner in which these efforts and accomplishments have been financed; and the management of the entity's assets and liabilities. Federal financial reporting should provide information that helps the reader to determine

- the costs of providing specific programs and activities and the composition of, and changes in, these costs;
- the efforts and accomplishments associated with federal programs and the changes over time and in relation to costs; and
- the efficiency and effectiveness of the government's management of its assets and liabilities.

Stewardship—Federal financial reporting should assist report users in assessing the impact on the country of the government's operations and investments for the period and how, as a result, the government's and the nation's financial condition has changed and may change in the future. Federal financial reporting should provide information that helps the reader to determine whether

- the government's financial position improved or deteriorated over the period,
- future budgetary resources will likely be sufficient to sustain public services and to meet obligations as they come due, and
- government operations have contributed to the nation's current and future well-being.

Systems and Control—Federal financial reporting should assist report users in understanding whether financial management systems and internal accounting and administrative controls are adequate to ensure that

- transactions are executed in accordance with budgetary and financial laws and other requirements, consistent with the purposes authorized, and are recorded in accordance with federal accounting standards;
- assets are properly safeguarded to deter fraud, waste, and abuse; and
- performance measurement information is adequately supported.

---

---

## Table of Contents

|   | <b>Page</b> |
|---|-------------|
| <b>Summary</b>  | 1           |
| <b>Executive Summary</b>  | 4           |
| <b>Federal Financial Reporting and the Role of the Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board</b>    | 9           |
| <b>The Federal Accounting and Financial Reporting Environment</b>                                     | 14          |
| <b>Accountability and Users' Information Needs—the Foundation of Governmental Financial Reporting</b> | 19          |
| <b>Objectives of Federal Financial Reporting</b>  | 25          |
| <b>Balancing Costs and Benefits in Recommending Standards</b>   | 34          |
| <b>Qualitative Characteristics of Information in Financial Reports</b>                                | 35          |
| <b>How Accounting Supports Federal Financial Reporting</b>  | 37          |
| <b>How Financial Reporting Supports Reporting on Operating Performance</b>                            | 45          |
| <b>Appendix A: Basis for Conclusions</b>  | 50          |
| <b>Appendix B: Users' Information Needs Addressed by Federal Financial Reporting</b>                  | 57          |
| <b>Appendix C: Selected Federal Reports Prepared on a Recurring Basis</b>                             | 61          |

---

---

## Executive Summary

---

### Introduction

1. This document is a conceptual statement on the objectives of financial reporting by the federal government. It focuses on the uses, user needs, and objectives of such reporting. Statements on concepts, such as this document, differ from statements of recommended accounting standards. Statements on concepts are more general than statements of standards and do not contain specific recommendations that would, when issued by the Board's sponsors, become authoritative requirements for federal agencies and auditors.
2. Instead, statements on concepts, after approval by the Board's sponsors, provide general guidance to the Board itself as it deliberates on specific issues. They also help others to understand federal accounting and financial reports.
3. The objectives are designed to guide the Board in developing accounting standards to enhance the financial information reported by the federal government to (1) demonstrate its accountability to internal and external users of federal financial reports, (2) provide useful information to internal and external users of federal financial reports, and (3) help internal users of financial information improve the government's management.
4. The objectives reflect the federal environment. They also reflect many of the needs expressed by current and potential users of federal financial information. They provide a framework for assessing the existing financial reporting systems of the federal government and for considering how new accounting standards might help to enhance accountability and decision-making in a cost-effective manner.
5. The FASAB notes that many information sources other than financial statements help to attain these objectives. The objectives relate to the management and financial reporting systems in the federal government in their entirety.
6. Listing the objectives does not imply a judgment about the extent to which they are now being attained. Indeed, it is presumed that the objectives are being met to some degree now. However, the federal government does not have an integrated mechanism for reporting within the context of these objectives. The FASAB will consider where new accounting standards could make a useful and cost-effective contribution to improving the extent to which these objectives are attained.

- 
7. The Department of the Treasury, the Office of Management and Budget, and the Government Accountability Office expect that, to the extent possible, their reporting requirements will be aligned with the Board's objectives and standards.

---

## Background and Rationale

8. The federal government derives its just powers from the consent of the governed. It therefore has a special responsibility to report on its actions and the results of those actions. These reports must accurately reflect the distinctive nature of the federal government and must provide information useful to the citizens, their elected representatives, federal executives, and program managers. Providing this information to the public, the news media, and elected officials is an essential part of accountability in government. Providing this information to program managers, executives, and members of Congress is essential to planning and conducting government functions economically, efficiently, and effectively for the benefit of society.
9. Financial reporting is not the only source of information to support decision-making and accountability. Neither can financial reporting, by itself, ensure that the government operates as it should. Financial reporting can, however, make a useful contribution toward fulfilling those goals.
10. The objectives apply to both internal and external financial reports. They are intended to improve the relevance, consistency, and quality of accounting and other data available for a wide variety of applications.
11. The FASAB and its sponsors believe that any statement of objectives of federal financial reporting must be based on the needs of those who use the reports. Those users include citizens, Congress, federal executives, and federal program managers. Current and potential users of federal financial information want information to help them assess how well the government is doing by answering questions regarding such topics as:
- **Budgetary integrity:** What legal authority was provided for financing government activities and for spending the monies? Were the financing and spending in accordance with these authorities?
  - **Operating performance:** How much do various programs cost, and how were they financed? What outputs and outcomes were achieved? What and where are the important assets, and how effectively are they managed? What liabilities arose from operating the program, and how will they be liquidated or provided for?
  - **Stewardship:** Did the government's financial condition improve or deteriorate? What provision was made for the future?

- 
- **Systems and Control:** Does the government have cost-effective systems and controls to safeguard its assets? Is it able to detect likely problems? Is it correcting deficiencies when detected?

12. Concerns like these define the following objectives of federal financial reporting.

---

## Objectives of Federal Financial Reporting

### Budgetary Integrity

13. Federal financial reporting should assist in fulfilling the government's duty to be publicly accountable for monies raised through taxes and other means and for their expenditure in accordance with the appropriations laws that establish the government's budget for a particular fiscal year and related laws and regulations. Federal financial reporting should provide information that helps the reader to determine
- how budgetary resources have been obtained and used and whether their acquisition and use were in accordance with the legal authorization,
  - the status of budgetary resources, and
  - how information on the use of budgetary resources relates to information on the costs of programs operations and whether information on the status of budgetary resources is consistent with other accounting information on assets and liabilities.

### Operating Performance

14. Federal financial reporting should assist report users in evaluating the service efforts, costs, and accomplishments of the reporting entity;<sup>1</sup> the manner in which these efforts and accomplishments have been financed; and the management of the entity's assets and liabilities. Federal financial reporting should provide information that helps the reader to determine
- the costs of providing specific programs and activities and the composition of, and changes in, these costs;
  - the efforts and accomplishments associated with federal programs and the changes over time and in relation to costs; and

---

<sup>1</sup>The FASAB has not yet considered criteria for defining, and terminology for describing, federal financial reporting components or units. In this document, therefore, the term "entity" is used in a generic way to refer, depending on the context, to the U. S. government as a whole; to organizational component units of the government, such as an agency; and to other kinds of potential reporting units, such as programs.

- 
- the efficiency and effectiveness of the government's management of its assets and liabilities.

### Stewardship

15. Federal financial reporting should assist report users in assessing the impact on the country of the government's operations and investments for the period and how, as a result, the government's and the nation's financial conditions have changed and may change in the future.
16. Federal financial reporting should provide information that helps the reader to determine whether
  - the government's financial position improved or deteriorated over the period,
  - future budgetary resources will likely be sufficient to sustain public services and to meet obligations as they come due, and
  - government operations have contributed to the nation's current and future well-being.

### Systems and Controls

17. Federal financial reporting should assist report users in understanding whether financial management systems and internal accounting and administrative controls are adequate to ensure that
  - transactions are executed in accordance with budgetary and financial laws and other requirements, consistent with the purpose authorized, and are recorded in accordance with federal accounting standards;
  - assets are properly safeguarded to deter fraud, waste, and abuse; and
  - performance measurement information is adequately supported.

---

### Organization of the Statement

18. The first two chapters of this statement present background information on the Board and the federal environment. Chapter 3 identifies the four groups of current and potential users of federal financial reports and gives examples of some of their information needs. Chapter 4 states and explains the objectives of federal financial reporting in more detail than does this executive summary.
19. Chapter 5 explains some limitations of the standard-setting process within the context of user needs. Chapter 6 discusses the desirable qualitative characteristics of financial

---

information. Chapter 7 explains how accounting supports federal financial reporting. Chapter 8 explains how financial reporting supports reporting on operating performance.

20. Appendix A sets forth the basis for the Board's conclusions. Appendix B presents a categorization of user needs according to types of information identified by the users rather than according to objectives. Appendix C lists some major federal reports that are regularly produced.

---

---

## Chapter 1: Federal Financial Reporting And The Role Of The Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board

21. Financial reporting by the federal government provides information for formulating policy, planning actions, evaluating performance, and other purposes. In addition, the processes of preparing and auditing financial reports can enhance the government's overall accountability structure by providing greater assurance that transactions are recorded and reported accurately, that consistent definitions are used to describe the transactions, etc. Thus, federal financial reporting helps to fulfill the government's duty to manage programs economically, efficiently, and effectively and to be publicly accountable.
22. Financial reporting is supported and made possible by accounting and accounting systems. "Financial reporting" may be defined as the process of recording, reporting, and interpreting, in terms of money, an entity's financial transactions and events with economic consequences for the entity. Reporting in the federal government also deals with nonfinancial information about service efforts and accomplishments of the government, i.e., the inputs of resources used by the government, the outputs of goods and services provided by the government, the outcomes and impacts of governmental programs, and the relationships among these elements.<sup>2</sup>

---

### Role Of The FASAB In Federal Accounting And Financial Reporting

*The mission of the FASAB is to recommend accounting standards [for the federal government] after ... considering the financial and budgetary information needs of congressional oversight groups, executive agencies, and the needs of other users of federal financial information.*<sup>3</sup>

23. The FASAB and its sponsors believe that any description of federal financial reporting objectives should consider the needs of both internal and external report users and the decisions they make. This implies a different role for the FASAB than for the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) and the Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB). The FASB sets financial reporting standards for privately owned entities in the United States. The GASB sets financial reporting standards for state and local governments.

---

<sup>2</sup>Except where the context indicates otherwise, the term "government" in this document refers both to the U.S. government as a whole and to its component reporting entities, such as agencies and programs.

<sup>3</sup>From the FASAB Mission Statement, approved by the Board and by the Secretary of the Treasury, the Director of OMB, and the Comptroller General of the United States in 1991.

- 
24. Those Boards exist primarily to set standards for general purpose financial reporting to external users of financial reports. This is because those users, by definition, have limited ability to control the nature of the information made available to them. The FASB and the GASB do not need to weigh heavily managers' information needs because those individuals, by definition, are assumed to have ready access to the information they need about the financial transactions and events that affect the financial position, operations, and financial condition of the entities they manage.
  25. The FASAB, on the other hand, considers the information needs of both internal and external users. In part, this is because the distinction between internal and external users is in many ways less significant for the federal government than for other entities. Officials who in theory should have ready access to information often find in practice that it is not available. Factors that contribute to this problem include the size and complexity of the government, the rapid turnover among senior political executives compared with the time required to install information systems in large bureaucracies, and the division of authority in the federal government.
  26. The FASAB's dual concern, with both internal and external reporting, is the result of such factors and of the Board's mandate. The FASAB was created to advise OMB and Treasury (agents of the President) and the GAO (an agent of the Congress) on accounting standards for federal agencies and programs in order to improve financial reporting practices.
  27. The Board's sponsors have separate constitutional and statutory authorities for setting accounting policy for the government. The division of powers in the U.S. government means that different policymakers with independent authority find it useful to have a mechanism to coordinate their accounting policy activities. The Board and its public deliberative process also provide a new arena for the participants to deliberate and to discover how federal accounting and financial reporting can be improved.
  28. Just as the traditional distinction between internal and external report users is less useful in the federal context, some of the traditional ways of classifying financial *reports* are less relevant. Reports can be intended primarily for a designated special purpose or for general purpose use. In the federal government, as in most entities, internal financial reporting is designed for special purposes. Internal financial reporting helps managers to plan, conduct, and coordinate their activities and to evaluate the economy, efficiency, and effectiveness of their programs.

- 
29. Much external federal financial reporting also is for special purposes, but some is for general purpose use; that is, it attempts to meet the common needs of many different users who have limited power to demand information directly. These reports are known as general purpose reports.<sup>4</sup>

---

## Limitations Of Financial Reporting

30. The FASB and the GASB focus primarily on general purpose financial reporting because that is their mandate and reason for being. Even so, those Boards recognize that general purpose financial reporting is not the only source of financial information about such entities. In many cases, users of general purpose financial reports need to consult other sources to satisfy their information needs. This is no less true for the federal government.
31. While certain information is provided by general purpose financial reports, other information is better provided by, or can be provided only by, financial reporting outside such reports. Still other information is provided by nonfinancial reports or by financial reports about segments of the national society other than the federal government and its component entities (e.g., economic reporting).
32. Often, to satisfy the information needs of various individuals, it is necessary to combine and report financial and nonfinancial information. Often, combining information about the government with information about aspects of the national society is necessary to assess past or planned governmental actions. For example, information about the number of people gainfully employed after participating in a vocational education program would be important both in assessing past governmental expenditures for training and in evaluating plans for similar new expenditures.
33. Some questions arise with special force regarding the nature of general purpose reports because, by definition, no user or potential user is able unilaterally to define the requirements for these reports. The FASAB is, by design, well constituted to consider the issues involved with such reports.
34. Federal accounting also must support special purpose reporting to the Congress, executives, and others that the FASAB represents. Indeed, most federal financial reporting is special purpose reporting. Also, the Board notes that traditional “general purpose” financial reports

---

<sup>4</sup>In state and local governmental accounting, the term “general-purpose financial statements (GPFS)” has a quite specific meaning. Standards published by the GASB define in detail the form and content of such reports. The term “general-purpose reports” is used in a more generic sense in this document to refer to a variety of federal financial reports.

---

may serve a larger and more useful purpose for a variety of audiences if traditional designs for such reports are expanded to include a variety of reports addressing budgetary integrity, operating performance, stewardship, and control of federal activities.

---

## Evolutionary Approach

35. The FASAB recognizes that developing and implementing standards that will contribute to achieving certain objectives may take considerable time. Time will be needed to establish information-gathering systems and to gain experience by experimenting with alternative approaches.
36. The FASAB expects that some of these objectives may best be accomplished through means of reporting outside general purpose financial reports. Indeed, the FASAB recognizes that information sources other than financial reporting, sources over which the FASAB may have little or no influence, also are important to achieving the goals implied by these objectives.
37. In developing specific standards, the FASAB will consider the needs of financial information users, the usefulness of the information in relation to the cost of developing and providing it, and the ability of accounting standards to address those needs compared with other information sources.

---

## Background Information On Federal Financial Reporting

38. Different people are likely to talk about very different things when asked to describe federal financial reporting or federal accounting. A few examples will illustrate this point
39. **An economist**, when asked this question, is likely to refer to reports about the national society as a whole. Among the most important of such financial reports are the national income and product accounts (NIPA) that measure the nation's aggregate expenditures on currently produced output. Federal government expenditures, of course, constitute a significant fraction of the total expenditures in the economy. The NIPAs, as a system, emerged in the 1940s and were built on work done in the U.S. Department of Commerce beginning in the 1930s and earlier by private organizations.
40. The NIPAs provide a picture of the economic transactions that occur in an accounting period, such as a year. The approach is to provide such a picture through a set of accounts that aggregate the accounts belonging to the individual transactors in the economy—workers, businesses, and consumers, among others—whether or not formal accounting statements exist explicitly for all of them.

- 
41. The NIPAs provide vital information to policymakers and others who are planning future actions and to individuals who would like to assess the effects of past actions. The NIPAs are recognized as an essential part of economic reporting by national governments. For this reason, the United Nations has developed the System of National Accounts (SNA). The SNA is a comprehensive, integrated, and internationally comparable statistical base for analysis in key policy-making areas, such as economic growth, inflation, and productivity.
  42. This Statement does not deal directly with such accounts of the economic activity of the national society. The focus of this Statement is on accounting systems and financial reports that deal with the budgetary integrity, operating performance, and stewardship of the government as such; that is, of the government as a legal and organizational entity within the national society. However, to report on some aspects of the government's performance and stewardship, economic and other information about the national society is essential. Thus, the FASAB may consider whether such economic information should be included in certain financial reports, such as general purpose financial reports for the U.S. government as a whole.
  43. **A financial analyst** on Wall Street, when asked about federal financial reporting, is likely to think of the "Daily Treasury Statement" and the "Monthly Treasury Statement of Receipts and Outlays of the United States Government." Some financial analysts study these Treasury reports regularly to assess the effect of cash flows on bank reserves and the size of the government's borrowing requirements. The federal government's borrowing is viewed as free of default risk because of the government's ability to tax and to create money. The power to tax depends on the government's willingness to tax and the strength of the economy.
  44. From a longer-term perspective, it is true, however, that borrowers' expectations about such factors as future inflation and the relative value of the dollar compared with other currencies can influence the borrowing costs of the United States. Those expectations, in turn, may be influenced by the deficit reported or projected by the government, the current inflation rate, and other factors.
  45. **Someone concerned with formulating or executing the U.S. budget**, when asked about the "federal accounting model," is likely to think of the budgetary accounting system. This is the system used to keep track of spending authority at various stages of budget execution from appropriation through apportionment and allotment to obligation and eventual outlay. This system is used by Congress and the executive branch for such purposes as "scoring" the budget and for assessing the economic implications of federal financial activity at an aggregate level. It also is used for planning and controlling government operations at more detailed, disaggregated levels. Of course, people involved with the budget also are informed by, and rely on, sources of information other than the budgetary accounting system, e.g., program evaluation and performance measures.

- 
46. Although the FASAB does not recommend standards for the budget or budget concepts, part of its mission is to recommend accounting principles that will help provide relevant and reliable financial information to support the budgetary process. Furthermore, information about budget execution is essential to assessing budgetary integrity.
47. **Accountants working for the federal government, individuals auditing government programs, or students in a governmental accounting course** are likely to think first of what are known within the federal government as the “proprietary” accounts and the reports prepared, in part, from information in them. These accounts are used to record assets and liabilities that are not accounted for in the budgetary accounts. These reports are said to present “financial position” and “results of operations” in accordance with some set of accounting standards. The FASAB is most directly concerned with these accounts and with the reports that are prepared, in large part, with information from them.
48. Attention to this and other aspects of federal accounting and financial reporting has been greatly increased by the Chief Financial Officers Act of 1990 (CFO Act). This act mandates improved financial management by requiring, among other things, (1) new financial organizations, (2) enhanced systems, and (3) audited financial reporting. However, the FASAB’s area of concern is not limited to the reports required by the CFO Act.

---

## Chapter 2: The Federal Accounting And Financial Reporting Environment

49. Financial reporting is an important, basic tool in the management and oversight of most organizations. It is particularly important for the federal government because of the government’s fundamental nature and responsibilities and because the federal government operates with fewer external restraints than other entities. Federal accounting and financial reporting are shaped by, and need to respond to, the unique characteristics and environment of the federal government, as discussed below.

---

---

## Sovereignty

50. The federal government is unique, when compared with any other entity in the country, because it is the vehicle through which the citizens of the United States exercise their sovereign power.<sup>5</sup> The federal government has the power through law, regulation, and taxation to exercise ultimate control over many facets of the national economy and society. All other entities within the nation, both public and private, operate within the context of laws, oversight, and accountability established by the national government. The federal government is accountable only to its citizens. It is politically accountable to the electorate, but no higher agency has the power to demand an accounting from the government.

---

## Separation Of Powers

51. Because of their concern about potential abuse of the national government's power, the founders designed a government characterized by the separation of powers. Each branch of government—legislative, executive, and judicial—is checked and constrained by the others. Paradoxically, this same separation of power can obscure responsibility and reduce accountability. The interrelated responsibilities of the legislative and executive branches, for example, can make it difficult to assign responsibility for the policies that are adopted.

---

## Federal System Of Government

52. The federal system of government— comprising federal, state, and local levels of government—also makes it difficult to pinpoint accountability for many programs. The federal government's responsibility relative to that of the states has gradually expanded. The federal government has undertaken responsibilities in areas such as income redistribution, education, and health care. Often, however, the expansion has come without direct federal control over related operations. Responsibilities and financial resources of the three levels of government have become intermingled. Citizens are not clear about who is in charge, where to press for performance, and whom they should blame for bad results.

---

<sup>5</sup>The word "sovereign," much discussed by legal and political philosophers, is used here in its broad, popular sense to imply (1) internally that the people are the ultimate (if indirect) overseer or authority in the decision-making process of a democratic state and (2) externally that the state is autonomous or independent. As noted by one authority on the subject, either type of sovereignty, internal or external, implies that there is no higher agency. In a more limited sense, sovereignty is the power to make or change the law, a power exercised collectively by individuals and institutions operating in a complex system of relationships. See "Sovereignty," W. J. Stankiewicz, *The New Encyclopedia Britannica*, 15th. ed. (1976), vol. 17, pp. 309-313.

---

---

## Responsibility For The Common Defense And General Welfare

53. The federal government is unique in that it has continuing responsibility for the nation's common defense and general welfare. As a result, the government's financial condition is necessarily a secondary consideration in many cases. For example, the nation would enter into military conflict to protect its vital national interests despite the fact that doing so would worsen an already large deficit. (Similarly, the government's greatest resource is one that it does not own but can tax: the national economy.)
54. Further, providing for the nation's general welfare is a broad responsibility that involves multiple goals. There is no single measure of success (like "return on investment" or "earnings per share"). Goals often are not explicitly defined in quantifiable terms and sometimes conflict with each other. Relevant measures of performance are usually nonfinancial. For example, many federal loan programs are charged with two conflicting goals: (1) to operate as a fiscally prudent lender and (2) to provide high-risk lenders with credit.

---

## Power To Tax, Borrow, And Create Money

55. As stated, the federal government has unique access to financial resources and financing. It has the power to tax, to borrow, and to create money. These powers give the government a call on the underlying wealth of the United States—a vast but finite pool of resources.
56. There is no constitutional requirement to provide sufficient revenues to fund expenditures of the federal government. There is a statutory limit on the amount of U.S. debt. This limit is routinely increased by Congress and the President. The federal government's ability to finance its debt has not been constrained by capital market assessments of its creditworthiness. It is true, however, that the cost of servicing the U.S. debt now constrains the range of feasible fiscal and monetary policies more than was formerly the case.
57. The federal government—through the Federal Reserve—also has the power to create money and to control its supply.<sup>6</sup> This ensures that creditors will be repaid, at least in nominal terms. When the government's debt is large, it also provides a temptation to create money, as well as inflation.

---

<sup>6</sup>The Federal Reserve Board functions as a largely independent entity but is, of course, a government agency created by congressional action.

---

---

## Influence Of Organized Interests

58. Because of the size and nature of government programs, it is difficult for individuals to evaluate or to influence policies and actions of the federal government. Typically, individuals must organize to exercise influence. Small groups whose members are significantly affected by a common factor or concern can be organized relatively easily, but they may find it difficult to wield much influence. Large groups may be influential, but organizing them is difficult if the members have common but diffuse interests. Once organized, interest groups tend to perpetuate themselves.
59. As a result, most elected and appointed federal officials, and the groups to which they are responsive, have been interested primarily in information about individual government programs, functions, or activities. They have been less interested in information about the government as a whole and even less concerned about intermediate levels of reporting, such as individual departments.

---

## Political System Versus Private Markets

60. The federal government is not subject to the discipline of competitive markets for private goods, services, and capital. Generally, transactions between citizens and the government are not individual exchanges between willing buyers and willing sellers. Taxpayers provide resources involuntarily, based on their consumption, wealth, or income rather than on their desire for particular government services. Even when user fees are charged, they often are not intended to represent market clearing prices—prices that would, in markets for private goods, balance supply and demand.
61. Thus, citizens as individuals have little say in selecting the public services they pay for. Decisions on what public services will be provided are collective decisions made through the political process. Politically influential recipients of benefits can force less influential non-recipients to bear the cost of the benefits.
62. Further, because most governmental revenues are not earned in individual, voluntary, exchange transactions, no private market directly measures the value of output. Consequently, the value added to society's well-being by government programs cannot be gauged by conventional measures of net income, nor is there much competitive market constraint on the quantity or quality of services provided. Instead, decisions about the quantity, quality, and value of public services are collective decisions made by the political process.

---

---

## Assets

63. The government makes significant investments in assets, including public domain assets and large investments intended to produce growth (educational programs and research and development, for example).
64. In government, as in the private sector, assets are expected to provide benefits that outweigh costs. In the private sector, the notion of benefits is relatively straightforward: benefits are measured in terms of cash inflows. Assets are not acquired unless the value of expected cash flows exceeds acquisition costs.
65. In the government, this discipline does not usually exist. Expected benefits often are not cash inflows but rather are the services provided by the asset. Sometimes those services are provided to the government itself (e.g., government office buildings or motor pools). More often, the services are provided to the public (e.g., education and research and development).

---

## Responsibility To The News Media

66. The federal government is subjected to, and should encourage, scrutiny by the news media. Because of the lack of external restraints and because the government's power ultimately resides in the citizens, it has a special responsibility to citizens and taxpayers to disclose its activities.

---

## Importance Of The Budget

67. The budget is the most widely recognized and used financial report of the federal government. It is a principal surrogate for the missing external restraints discussed above. It is a vehicle for the political process to reach agreement on goals and to allocate resources among competing priorities. It provides a system for controlling expenditures. And it supplies information necessary for assessing the effect on the economy of the government's fiscal policies. The role of budgeting in financial reporting is discussed further in Chapter 7 under "Relationship of Financial Reporting to Budgeting."

---

## Need For Special Control Mechanisms

68. The lack of external restraints noted above creates a need for special control mechanisms. Some mechanisms exist today. The most important, of course, are the political constraints

---

and accountability imposed by regular elections and the separation of powers and the other constitutional constraints and accountabilities, such as the federal system and freedom of speech.

69. Accounting and financial reporting also play a role. Budgetary obligation accounting is used to control activities, primarily at the budget account level. Audited financial reports can provide users with assurance that accounting systems are providing consistent and reliable data.
70. However, the need for improvement in financial reporting is widely recognized, as is the fact that financial information alone often is insufficient for decision-making. For example, financial information on costs often must be combined with nonfinancial information on performance to provide a basis for assessing the efficiency and effectiveness of government programs.

---

## Chapter 3: Accountability And Users' Information Needs—the Foundation Of Governmental Financial Reporting

71. It may be said that “accountability” and its corollary, “decision usefulness,” comprise the two fundamental values of governmental accounting and financial reporting. They provide the foundation for the objectives of federal financial reporting. Because a democratic government should be accountable for its integrity, performance, and stewardship, it follows that the government must provide information useful to assess that accountability. Similarly, because a democratic government is accountable for operating economically, efficiently, and effectively, for the purposes intended by citizens and their elected officials, certain other conclusions logically follow. Specifically, those who formulate, select, and implement government policies and programs need information useful for planning, controlling, and conducting government functions.
72. The assertion of accountability therefore leads to identifying, first, those to whom government is accountable and, second, the information needed to maintain and demonstrate that accountability. Accordingly, this Chapter first discusses the concept of accountability, then identifies the four groups of users of federal financial reports. It concludes by providing some examples of the information needs that may be addressed to some extent by federal financial reports.

---

---

## Accountability

73. Several different kinds of accountability can be distinguished, and a given piece of information may be relevant in different ways to judgments about accountability. For example, one authority suggests that there are five levels or types of public accountability:
- Level 1 is policy accountability—selection of policies pursued and rejected (value).
  - Level 2 is program accountability—establishment and achievement of goals (outcomes).
  - Level 3 is performance accountability—efficient operation (efficiency and economy).
  - Level 4 is process accountability—using adequate processes, procedures, or measures in performing the actions called for (planning, allocating, and managing).
  - Level 5 is probity and legality accountability—spending the funds in accordance with approved budget and/or approved items (compliance).<sup>7</sup>
74. In a democracy, appointed officials are accountable to their superiors, and elected officials are accountable to the citizens for each of these kinds of accountability. Accounting and financial reporting can help elected and appointed officials to maintain and to demonstrate their accountability. The last kind of accountability listed, for “probity and legality,” probably is the kind most often associated by the public with accounting. However, the accounting profession has long recognized that accounting can and should contribute to achieving and demonstrating several kinds of accountability, such as
- accountability for financial resources;
  - accountability for faithful compliance or adherence to legal requirements and administrative policies;
  - accountability for efficiency and economy in operations; and
  - accountability for the results of government programs and activities, as reflected in accomplishments, benefits, and effectiveness.<sup>8</sup>

---

<sup>7</sup>J. D. Stewart, “The Role of Information in Public Accountability,” eds. Tony Hopwood and Cyril R. Tompkins, Issues in Public Sector Accounting (Oxford, Great Britain: Philip Allan, 1984), pp. 14-15, as cited by the GASB in its Preliminary Views on Service Efforts and Accomplishments Reporting (Dec. 1992).

<sup>8</sup>Report of the Committee on Concepts of Accounting Applicable to the Public Sector, American Accounting Association (1970-71), pp. 80-81, as cited by the GASB in Preliminary Views on Service Efforts and Accomplishments Reporting (Dec. 1992).

---

---

## Users Of Federal Financial Reports

75. The Board believes that users of financial information about the federal government can be classified in four major groups: citizens, Congress, executives, and program managers.

### Citizens

76. This group includes individual citizens (without regard to whether they are taxpayers, voters, or service recipients). Citizens include the general news media and more specialized users, such as trade journals; public interest and other advocacy groups; state and local legislators and executives; and analysts from corporations, academe, and elsewhere.
77. Citizens are interested in many aspects of the federal government. They are concerned about individual programs, candidates for office, the services the government provides, and the fiscal responsibility of their elected and appointed representatives. Citizens receive and pay for government services and therefore are concerned with the outputs and outcomes of those services and the efficiency with which they are provided. Citizens are concerned about their families and, in particular, with the financial burden their children and grandchildren will inherit. As individuals, citizens typically have limited time and ability to analyze reports about their government; they want and rely on assurances that the government is functioning economically, efficiently, and effectively. As they are organized and represented by analysts working for interest groups and the news media, citizens want more information about the government's activities.
78. Citizens express their interest in the government by discussing issues, by voting, and by writing to their representatives about the quality and quantity of the services they receive. In some cases, citizens may decide whether and when to use services and products provided by the government. They may contribute to political campaigns, demonstrate support or opposition for individuals responsible for past and proposed government actions, and even run for office.

### Congress

79. This group includes elected members of Congress and their staffs, including staff of the Congressional Budget Office (CBO) and the GAO. Congress is concerned with broad policies, priorities, and the programs that implement those priorities. It decides what taxes to impose, what funds should be spent, and for what purpose. Thus, Congress is concerned both with how to finance programs and with how they are executed.
80. Congress participates—along with the administration—in the basic decisions that describe the intent of government. Such decisions include passing laws in response to public demand,

---

allocating resources among competing programs, and establishing policy that affects various aspects of the country's economic and social life. These decisions often are influenced by assessing costs and benefits and by considering the effect of the government's aggregate financial requirements on the economy.

81. Congress also participates in monitoring government programs. It assesses the management performance of the executive branch and the efficiency and effectiveness of programs.

### Executives

82. This group includes the President and those acting as his agents, i.e., program agency heads and their deputy, under, and assistant agency heads; heads of bureaus, administrations, services, and agencies; and the central agency officials in OMB and the Department of the Treasury.
83. Executives, like Congress, are concerned with the government's goals, objectives, and policies. Executives focus on the strategic plans and programs that are intended to achieve presidential and congressional goals and to implement their policies. In particular, they pay attention to budgets that, from the perspective of each agency, are the source of the resources needed to achieve goals and to implement policies. Executives are, of course, directly concerned about the management of programs, that is, with the actual delivery of services and with the efficiency and effectiveness of the delivery process.
84. Executives develop legislative proposals, recommend the necessary level of program funding, and formulate financing and revenue-raising strategies. They help select the method for delivering services. They determine whether program managers have been accountable for the resources entrusted to them and whether programs are operating efficiently and effectively. Executives also provide information that will enable the President and Congress to monitor programs.

### Program Managers

85. This group includes individuals who manage government programs. Their concerns include operating plans, program operations, and budget execution.
86. Program managers assist in the design of programs and organize the method selected for delivering services. They recommend program budgets based on detailed plans that set forth needs for money, staffing, facilities, and inventory.
87. Program managers establish operating procedures for their programs and manage them within the limits of the spending authority granted by Congress. They select, supervise, and evaluate personnel. They also make sure that program inventory and facilities are acquired

---

economically, maintained adequately, and used efficiently. Program managers need to provide information to enable executives and Congress to monitor the programs.

---

## The Needs Of Users Of Federal Financial Reports

88. While the financial information needs of these groups is more diverse than their membership, those needs can be categorized under four broad headings.

### Budgetary Integrity

89. All user groups need information about the budget. For citizens, information about budget execution provides assurance that their elected and appointed representatives have fulfilled their most basic fiduciary responsibility: to raise and spend money in accordance with the law.
90. For the President's economic team and for congressional budget committees, information is needed on budget aggregates (total budget authority, total receipts and collections, and total outlays) to establish fiscal policy, including governmental financing needs. These officials need to know that prior-year "actuals" have been accurately recorded in accordance with the same budgetary principles used to prepare estimates.
91. To avoid violations of the Anti-Deficiency Act and the Impoundment Control Act, program managers need information about obligations incurred on their programs. They need periodic information about the status of budgetary resources, that is, the extent to which the resources have been used or remain available. They also want to know whether budgetary resources are available to be used for other purposes through reprogramming.

### Operating Performance

92. Citizens want information about programs that affect them. Veterans, for example, want to know about new hospitals, and defense workers want information about contract awards (and cancellations). Retirees and people planning retirement—and their representatives in Congress—want to know that the Social Security Administration provides reliable services to the public.
93. Congress and executives want information about the comparative costs of programs (such as the per student cost of the Job Corps Program versus that of other job training programs). For comparisons to be valid, costs must be defined and measured alike.

- 
94. Of course, information on the effectiveness of programs is also needed to make valid comparisons among programs. Information is needed about outputs (e.g., number of students who graduated) and outcomes (e.g., number of students who got and held jobs for which they were trained).
  95. Executives and program managers need to know the cost of performing work reimbursed by other government entities or by nonfederal customers. Costs, in this case, would measure the resources (personnel, material, and equipment) used to accomplish the work.
  96. Congress and executives often want cost information that would help to compare alternative courses of action. How much more or less would it cost if the Census Bureau used a new approach to taking the census? How much would be saved if an Army division were based in the United States rather than in Europe?
  97. Program managers need information on the assets and liabilities related to operations. Managers of loan programs need information on the quality of their loan portfolios. Managers of repair depots want information on inventories, such as their value, quantity, location, age, and condition. Managers of government facilities need to know the facilities' condition and an estimate of future outlays made necessary by deferring needed maintenance.
  98. Congress and executives need information about the market value of assets that could be sold, such as precious metals or other commodities.

### Stewardship

99. Citizens, Congress, executives, and program managers need information to assess the effect of the government's activities on its financial condition and that of the nation. Information is needed about the financial outlook for both the short and the long term.
100. Information is needed on the government's exposure and risks associated with deposit insurance, pension insurance, and flood insurance. People need to know about likely future expenditures for cleaning up nuclear weapons sites and military bases. They want information that will help them assess the likelihood and amount of future claims that might arise from government-sponsored enterprises.
101. All users need information on earmarked revenues recorded in trust funds. They want to know, for example, whether the Social Security Trust funds are likely, in the foreseeable future, to need infusions of new taxes to pay benefits. Citizens need to know the implications of investing trust fund revenues in government securities.
102. Users also need trend information on spending on investments in physical and human capital versus spending on consumption.

---

## Systems and Control

103. Users at all levels need information on internal controls and the adequacy of financial management systems. Citizens want assurances that systems and controls are in place to protect the resources they supply to the government. They want to know that operating procedures and processes provide reasonable assurance that those resources are used economically and efficiently for the purposes intended. Congress, executives, and program managers need to demonstrate to those to whom they are accountable that they have, in fact, protected those resources and used them well. Users want to know, for example, that agency heads have determined that internal controls are adequate, that basic financial statements are auditable, and that high-risk areas have been identified and addressed.
104. The implications of these four broad categories of information needs for the objectives of federal financial reporting are discussed in more detail in the next Chapter.

---

## Chapter 4: Objectives Of Federal Financial Reporting

105. The federal government derives its just powers from the consent of the governed. It therefore has a special responsibility to report on its actions and the results of those actions. These reports must accurately reflect the distinctive nature of the federal government and must provide information useful to the people, their elected representatives, and federal executives. Providing this information to the public, the news media, and elected officials is an essential part of accountability in government. Providing this information to program managers, executives, and members of Congress is essential to planning and conducting the government's functions economically, efficiently, and effectively for the benefit of society.
106. Financial reporting is not the only source of information to support decision-making and accountability. Neither can financial reporting, by itself, ensure that the government operates as it should. Financial reporting can, however, make a useful contribution toward those objectives.
107. The objectives discussed below apply both to internal and to external financial reports. To some degree, they also apply both to special purpose and to general purpose reports. Users of general purpose financial reports may have difficulty obtaining relevant information to hold the federal government accountable if the government operates without appropriate reporting objectives and accounting standards. The Board also intends that these objectives and the ensuing standards will prove widely useful for other purposes, though they may not apply to every special report or every item in the accounting system. The objectives are intended to improve the relevance, consistency, and quality of accounting and other data available for a wide variety of applications.

- 
108. The Board expects that its recommendations will be applied to improve information for program management and executive and legislative branch decision-making. The Department of the Treasury, OMB, and the GAO expect that, to the extent possible, their reporting requirements will be aligned with the Board's objectives and standards.
109. Four major objectives are proposed, around which accounting standards should be organized. These objectives are designed to help ensure the accountability of the federal government and to better inform decisions influenced by financial information about the government. Each objective reflects the federal environment and meets many of the needs expressed by current and potential users of federal financial information. Together, they provide a framework for assessing the existing accountability and financial reporting systems of the federal government and for considering how new accounting standards might be able to enhance those systems in a cost-effective manner.
110. Current and potential users of federal financial information want information to help them assess how well the government is doing by answering questions regarding topics like those below:
- **Budgetary Integrity:** What legal authority was provided for financing government activities and for spending the monies? Were the financing and spending in accordance with these authorities? How much was left?
  - **Operating Performance:** How much do various programs cost, and how were they financed? What outputs and outcomes were achieved? What and where are the important assets, and how effectively are they managed? What liabilities arose from operating the program, and how will they be provided for or liquidated?
  - **Stewardship:** Did the government's financial condition improve or deteriorate? What provision was made for the future?
  - **Systems and Control:** Does the government have cost-effective systems and controls to safeguard its assets? Is it able to detect likely problems? Is it correcting deficiencies when detected?
111. Concerns like these define the objectives of federal financial reporting. In the following text, objectives and subobjectives are stated in bold italic type. Each of the objectives and subobjectives is followed by a commentary that explains some of the implications of the objective.

---

---

## Budgetary Integrity

### Objective 1

112. **Federal financial reporting should assist in fulfilling the government’s duty to be publicly accountable for monies raised through taxes and other means and for their expenditure in accordance with the appropriations laws that establish the government’s budget for a particular fiscal year and related laws and regulations.**

113. This objective arises generally from the responsibility of representative governments to be accountable for the monies that are raised and spent and for compliance with law. More specifically it arises from the requirement in Article I, Section 9 of the Constitution of the United States that “No Money shall be drawn from the Treasury, but in Consequence of Appropriations made by Law; and a regular Statement and Account of the Receipts and Expenditures of all public Money shall be published from time to time.” Its focus is the Budget of the United States Government, the President’s annual budget submission to the Congress, which is the government’s principal financial report, and the laws enacting budget authority for a given fiscal year. The Budget of the United States Government is the initial frame of reference within which Congress and the President enact the laws that require the payment of taxes and provide the authority to obligate and spend money.

114. The focus of this objective is retrospective. That is, the focus is on recording actual data from budget execution against appropriations made by Congress using existing budgetary standards. Thus, it would validate the “actual” column shown in the Budget of the United States Government. It would also provide data that could be shown in other reports as a statement of budget execution or a statement of the status of budgetary resources. The data also could be displayed in analytical tables showing, for example, the historical pattern of receipts and outlays.

115. Certain subobjectives arise from the basic objective of budgetary integrity, as discussed below.

**Federal financial reporting should provide information that helps the reader to determine:**

116. **1A. How budgetary resources have been obtained and used and whether their acquisition and use were in accordance with the legal authorization.**

117. Considering this objective in conjunction with the specific information needs identified by the Board suggests some examples of information that might help meet this objective:

- government receipts and offsetting collections reported in total and by composition;

- 
- obligations according to the nature of services or items procured;
  - information about the extent of compliance with the budget and laws, and whether money was expended as intended by the federal government and its grantees; and
  - valid data on budget authority, obligations, and outlays by program and for all appropriation and fund accounts (summarized appropriately to fit the intended audience).

118. **1B. The status of budgetary resources.**

Examples of information that could help meet this objective include

- information about the sufficiency of budget authority for covering commitments and the status of obligated and unobligated balances of budgetary resources and
- assurances that funds authorized for a given purpose were actually spent for that purpose.

119. **1C. How information on the use of budgetary resources relates to information on the costs of program operations and whether information on the status of budgetary resources is consistent with other accounting information on assets and liabilities.**

120. This subobjective arises from the fact that accrual-basis measures of the cost of government programs, functions, and activities may differ from the amounts used in the budget for a variety of valid reasons.

121. Reports primarily intended to address objective 1 and its first two subobjectives would use budgetary measurement. Subobjective 1C would use both budgetary and accrual measures because reconciliation of the two is implied. The basic accounting unit for this objective would be the budget account, although accounts are often aggregated for some reporting purposes.

---

## Operating Performance

### Objective 2

122. **Federal financial reporting should assist report users in evaluating the service efforts, costs, and accomplishments of the reporting entity; the manner in which these efforts and accomplishments have been financed; and the management of the entity's assets and liabilities.**

- 
123. This objective arises from a democratic government's duty to be accountable to its citizens for managing resources and providing services economically and efficiently and for effectiveness in attaining planned goals. Also, the government should be accountable for raising resources efficiently.
124. Because government services are not usually provided in exchange for voluntary payments or fees, expenses cannot be matched against revenue to measure "earnings" or "net income" as would be done in business accounting. Moreover, directly measuring the value added to society's welfare by government actions is difficult. Nonetheless, expenses can be matched against the provision of services year by year. The resulting cost can then be analyzed in relationship to a variety of measures of the achievement of results.
125. Certain subobjectives arise from the basic objective of reporting on operating performance, as discussed below.

**Federal financial reporting should provide information that helps the reader to determine:**

126. **2A. The costs of providing specific programs and activities and the composition of, and changes in, these costs.**
127. Examples of financial information that can help to address this objective include
- information on the costs of programs and activities;
  - cost comparisons with estimates, with similar functions, with targets,<sup>9</sup> and over time; and
  - relevant analyses of the composition and behavior of costs, such as full and incremental costs, fixed and variable costs, direct and indirect costs, and reimbursable and other costs, where appropriate.
128. **2B. The efforts and accomplishments associated with federal programs and the changes over time and in relation to costs.**
129. Examples of information that can help to address this objective include
- financial and nonfinancial indicators of service inputs, outputs, and outcomes, including comparisons with goals;
  - indicators of program efficiency and effectiveness;
  - work load measures and unit costs; and

---

<sup>9</sup>"Performance targets" specify the level of performance that is set as a goal by policy and program officials. Targets may be set in terms of outputs, outcomes, impacts, cost per unit of output, etc.

- 
- total and marginal costs and benefits, the relationship of these to budget requests, and when the benefits will be realized.

130. **2C. The efficiency and effectiveness of the government's management of its assets and liabilities.**

131. This subobjective implies concern with the management of all federal assets and liabilities used by or under the control of agencies. Users of financial reports focus on the use of these resources in program operations, not solely on their financial value. Reports intended to address this objective would provide information to help users assess the efficiency and effectiveness with which

- cash is used;
- loan, loan guarantee, and other receivables programs are conducted;
- inventories of supplies, materials, and similar items are maintained; and
- forfeited and other tangible assets are handled.

132. Other examples of information relevant to this objective might include

- the service life and replacement cost of major systems and equipment;
- backlogs (and budgetary impact) of delayed maintenance, rehabilitation cost or replacement value of assets;
- the market value of forfeited and other assets, particularly those held for sale;
- the extent of unpaid expenses; and
- estimates (and ranges of estimates) of other known liabilities (such as leases or deposit and other insurance liabilities) and other exposures to loss.

133. Further discussion of performance measurement and how financial reporting can contribute to reporting on performance is provided in Chapter 8.

---

## Stewardship

### Objective 3

134. **Federal financial reporting should assist report users in assessing the impact on the country of the government's operations and investments for the period and how, as a result, the government's and the nation's financial condition has changed and may change in the future.**<sup>10</sup>

---

<sup>10</sup>The concepts of "financial position" and "financial condition" are discussed in Chapter 7.

---

135. This objective is based on the federal government's responsibility for the general welfare of the nation in perpetuity. It focuses not on the provision of specific services but on the requirement that the government report the broad outcomes of its actions. Certain subobjectives arise from the basic objective of stewardship, as discussed below.

**Federal financial reporting should provide information that helps the reader to determine:**

136. **3A. Whether the government's financial position improved or deteriorated over the period.**

Examples of information relevant to this objective include

- the amount of assets, liabilities, and net assets (or net position);
- an analysis of government debt, its growth, and debt service requirements;
- changes in the amount and service potential of capital assets; and
- the amount of contingent liabilities and unrecognized obligations (such as the probable cost of deposit insurance).

137. Assessing whether the government's financial position improved or deteriorated over the period is important not only because it has financial implications but also because it has social and political implications. This is because analysis of why financial position improved or deteriorated helps to explain whether financial burdens were passed on by current-year taxpayers to future-year taxpayers without related benefits. The latter notion is sometimes referred to as "interperiod equity."<sup>11</sup>

138. Viewed in this broader context, providing information to meet objective 3 and its subobjectives will help to satisfy the needs expressed by financial report users. It will also help to explain the issuance of new debt in relation to expenditures for activities with current benefits versus expenditures for investment-type activities that yield future benefits.

139. **3B. Whether future budgetary resources will likely be sufficient to sustain public services and to meet obligations as they come due.**

---

<sup>11</sup>In paragraph 61 of its first conceptual statement, *Objectives of Financial Reporting*, the GASB noted: "The Board believes that interperiod equity is a significant part of accountability and is fundamental to public administration. It therefore needs to be considered when establishing financial reporting objectives [for state and local governmental entities]. In short, financial reporting should help users assess whether current-year revenues are sufficient to pay for the services provided that year and whether future taxpayers will be required to assume burdens for services previously provided." GASB's Statement 11, *Measurement Focus and Basis of Accounting--Governmental Fund Operating Statements*, adds "Conversely, [a measure of interperiod equity] would show whether current-year revenues not only were sufficient to pay for current-year services, but also increased accumulated net resources."

140. Information about the results of past government operations is useful in assessing the stewardship exercised by the government. Users of financial reports also want help in assessing the likelihood that the government will continue to provide the current level of benefits and services to constituent groups, such as farmers, retirees, and the poor.
141. Information relevant to this objective may include disclosures of financial risks that are likely or reasonably possible from sources such as government-sponsored enterprises, deposit insurance, and disaster relief programs. It could also include information such as
- the long-term financial implications of the budgetary process,
  - the status of trust funds, and
  - backlogs of deferred maintenance.
142. Providing information of this kind may require the use of reporting mechanisms other than traditional financial statements. For example, special reports may have to be developed to demonstrate whether the level of a particular year's maintenance and rehabilitation expenditures resulted in an improvement or a deterioration of capital assets and infrastructure.
143. **3C. Whether government operations have contributed to the nation's current and future well-being.**
144. Objective 3, in general, and subobjective 3C, in particular, imply a concern with "financial condition," as well as "financial position." Financial condition is a broader and more forward-looking concept than that of financial position. Reporting on financial condition requires financial and nonfinancial information about the national economy and society, as well as about the government itself. For example, reports intended to help meet this objective might address users' needs for information about
- investments in (or expenditures for) research and development, military readiness, and education;
  - changes in the service potential of infrastructure assets;
  - spending for consumption relative to investments;
  - opportunities for growth-stimulating activities; and
  - the likelihood of future inflation.
145. Indicators of financial position, measured on an accrual basis, are the starting point for reporting on financial condition but must be supplemented in a variety of ways. For example, subobjective 3B might imply reporting, among other things, a current law budget projection under a range of alternative assumptions. Reports intended to achieve subobjective 3C might disclose, among other things, the contribution that the government is making to national wealth by financing assets that are not federally owned, such as research and development,

---

education and training, and state-owned infrastructure. Information on trends in total national wealth and income is also important.

---

## Systems And Control

### Objective 4

146. **Federal financial reporting should assist report users in understanding whether financial management systems and internal accounting and administrative controls are adequate to ensure that**

- **transactions are executed in accordance with budgetary and financial laws and other requirements, consistent with the purposes authorized, and are recorded in accordance with federal accounting standards;**
- **assets are properly safeguarded to deter fraud, waste, and abuse; and**
- **performance measurement information is adequately supported.**

147. This objective arises from the three preceding objectives, in conjunction with the fact that accounting supports both effective management and control of organizations and the process of reporting useful information. Indeed, accounting processes are an integral part of the management control system.

148. The ability to prepare financial reports that report all transactions, classified in appropriate ways that faithfully represent the underlying events, is itself an indication that certain essential controls are in place and operating effectively. The preparation of reliable financial reports also helps to ensure that reporting entities have early warning systems to indicate potential problems and take actions to correct material weaknesses or problems.

149. Sound controls over internal processes are essential both to safeguard assets and to ensure economy, efficiency, and effectiveness in many governmental programs.

150. Information relevant to this objective helps financial report users to determine whether the entity has established reasonable, cost-effective programs to safeguard assets, prevent and detect waste and abuse, and reduce error rates. An example of information that would address this objective is management's assertion about the effectiveness of the internal accounting and operational control system.

---

---

## Chapter 5: Balancing Costs And Benefits In Recommending Standards

151. Users' information needs define financial reporting. Even so, the process of articulating financial reporting objectives and then recommending accounting standards is not a simple progression from canvassing users of federal financial information to recommending standards. This is partly because such users, when asked about their information needs, may give answers that are limited by their past needs and experiences. More fundamentally, it is because articulating objectives and recommending accounting standards necessarily involve judgments about the costs and benefits of producing more information or of reporting it differently.
152. The standard-setting process is further complicated by the fact that any given accounting standard can have many different kinds of effects that must be considered. For example, accounting standards can influence the activities of agency accountants and the auditors who review reports prepared by those accountants, as well as the decisions of those who read the financial statements. Thus, a standard may influence which physical assets are under accounting control and the extent of work the auditor does to provide assurance about those assets. The accountants' and auditors' reports, in turn, may influence various decisionmakers in different ways as they select policies regarding the assets and the systems used to control them, decide how to implement the policies, and evaluate the results.
153. The standard setter must, to some extent, be aware of these potential effects when considering the costs and benefits of any given accounting alternative. As an added complication, *the same piece of information* may be used in different ways for different decisions. In other words, there are different kinds of "use." In some cases, the information may be consciously used in well-defined ways; in other cases, it may subtly influence the way people see the world, understand their options, and assess their priorities.
154. For example, the size of the deficit may have a very specific meaning with quite explicit implications (e.g., sequestration) under certain rules for scoring the budget. The deficit may also influence the economy because it affects aggregate demand and the government's financing requirements in a variety of ways that economists can only partially explain and quantify. Finally, the deficit may influence people's perceptions of their own well-being or of the nation's financial condition in more subjective or symbolic ways that can affect both private and collective behavior (e.g., willingness to undertake various new commitments, to pay more in taxes, or to accept reductions in program benefits).
155. Finally, as noted earlier, accounting and financial reporting cannot satisfy every need for information and accountability. For many purposes, other information sources and other techniques to maintain and demonstrate accountability are either essential or more cost-

---

effective. This constraint pervades any discussion of the objectives of federal financial reporting.

---

## Chapter 6: Qualitative Characteristics Of Information In Financial Reports

156. Financial reporting is the means of communicating with those who use financial information. For this communication to be effective, information in financial reports must have these basic characteristics: understandability, reliability, relevance, timeliness, consistency, and comparability.<sup>12</sup>

---

### Understandability

157. Special purpose reports are prepared to meet the needs of specified users. Understandability is rarely a problem in such cases because mutual understanding of what information is needed can generally be assumed between report preparer and report user. Information in general purpose financial reports, however, should be expressed as simply as possible. Users of general purpose financial reports, including internal users, tend to have different levels of knowledge and sophistication about government operations, accounting, and finance.

158. To be publicly accountable, the federal government and its component entities should issue general purpose financial reports that can be understood by those who may not have a detailed knowledge of accounting principles. Those reports should include explanations and interpretations to help report users understand the information in the proper context. However, general purpose financial reports should not exclude essential information merely because it is difficult to understand or because some report users choose not to use it.

159. For reports to be understandable to different audiences, different reports may be necessary to provide information relevant to the needs of the expected report users, with suitable amounts of detail, explanation, and related narrative. To be fully intelligible, financial information in general purpose reports may need to be presented in relation to the goals, service efforts, and accomplishments of the reporting entity.

---

<sup>12</sup>For the most part, these characteristics are similar to those described by the FASB and the GASB.

---

---

## Reliability

160. Financial reporting should be reliable; that is, the information presented should be verifiable and free from bias and should faithfully represent what it purports to represent. To be reliable, financial reporting needs to be comprehensive. Nothing material should be omitted from the information necessary to represent faithfully the underlying events and conditions, nor should anything be included that would likely cause the information to be misleading to the intended report user. Reliability does not imply precision or certainty, but reliability is affected by the degree of estimation in the measurement process and by uncertainties inherent in what is being measured. Financial reporting may need to include narrative explanations about the underlying assumptions and uncertainties inherent in this process. Under certain circumstances, a properly explained estimate provides more meaningful information than no estimate at all.

---

## Relevance

161. Relevance encompasses many of the other characteristics. For example, if the information provided in a financial report is not timely or reliable, it is not relevant. Information can, however, meet all other characteristics and still not be relevant. To be relevant, a logical relationship must exist between the information provided and the purpose for which it is needed. Information is relevant if it is capable of making a difference in a user's assessment of a problem, condition, or event. Relevance depends on the types of financial information needed by the various users to make decisions and to assess accountability.

---

## Timeliness

162. In some circumstances, the mere knowledge that a report eventually will be made public can influence behavior in desirable ways, just as the knowledge that one's tax return might eventually be audited can influence the behavior of people when they report their income. In other circumstances, however, if financial reports are to be useful, they must be issued soon enough to affect decisions. Timeliness alone does not make information useful, but the passage of time usually diminishes the usefulness that the information otherwise would have had. In some instances, timeliness may be so essential that it requires sacrificing a certain amount of precision or detail; a timely estimate may then be more useful than precise information that takes longer to produce.

---

---

## Consistency

163. Financial reports should be consistent over time; that is, once an accounting principle or reporting method is adopted, it should be used for all similar transactions and events unless there is good cause to change. The concept of consistency in financial reporting extends to many areas, such as valuation methods, basis of accounting, and determination of the financial reporting entity. If accounting principles have changed or if the financial reporting entity has changed, the nature and reason for the change, as well as the effect of the change, should be disclosed.

---

## Comparability

164. Financial reporting should help report users make relevant comparisons among similar federal reporting units, such as comparisons of the costs of specific functions or activities. Comparability implies that differences among financial reports should be caused by substantive differences in the underlying transactions or organizations rather than by the mere selection of different alternatives in accounting procedures or practices.

---

## Chapter 7: How Accounting Supports Federal Financial Reporting

165. This Chapter explains the focus of the FASAB's concern by showing how accounting supports financial reporting and thus how accounting standards recommended by the FASAB can influence federal financial reporting. This Chapter shows how the FASAB's recommendations can influence a wide variety of financial reports. Additionally, it lays a foundation for the discussion (in Chapter 8) of how financial reporting in general, and cost information in particular, contribute to performance reporting. In effect, Chapter 7 outlines parts of a conceptual framework for federal accounting but is limited to those ideas, such as "financial position" and "financial condition," that will help readers understand the Board's proposed statement of objectives for federal financial reporting.

---

## Financial Core Data

166. The accounting process begins with recording information about transactions between the government (or one of its component entities) and other entities, that is, inflows and outflows of resources or promises to provide them. These may involve flows of economic goods, cash, or promises. These comprise the "core" data of the accounting discipline. This

---

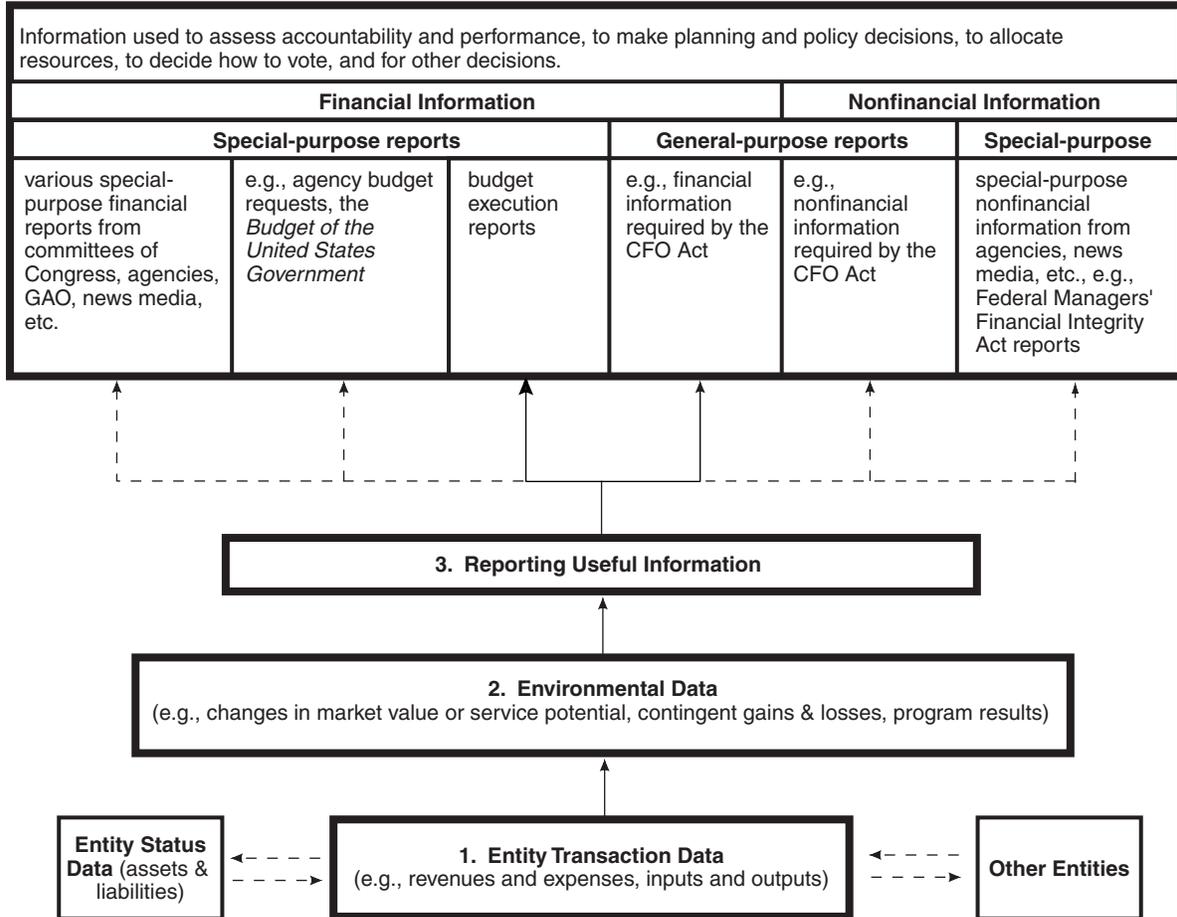
initial step in the accounting process is depicted at the bottom of figure 1, in the box numbered 1. To enhance the usefulness of this core set of data about transactions with other entities, accountants make various accruals, classifications, interpretations, etc.

167. Many accounting entries recorded in the accountant's general ledger data base are such rearrangements of data about previously recorded transactions with other entities rather than new transactions involving flows of resources or promises between entities.<sup>13</sup>
168. In the branch of accounting called financial accounting, the most noteworthy interpretations or classifications are those about which data pertain to the past and which pertain to the future. In other words, financial accounting is largely concerned with assigning the value of past transactions to appropriate time periods.
169. Transaction data assigned to a period that has elapsed are said to be "recognized" in the statement of operations (or income statement), e.g., as an expense or a revenue of that period. Transaction data pertaining to the future are recognized in the statement of financial position (or balance sheet) as assets and liabilities.

---

<sup>13</sup>See William J. Schrader, Robert E. Malcom, and John J. Willingham, "A Partitioned Events View of Financial Reporting," *Accounting Horizons* (Dec. 1988), p 10-20. For a more academic exploration of the ideas involved, see Yuji Ijiri, "Theory of Accounting Measurement," *Studies in Accounting Research #10*, American Accounting Association (1975).

**Figure 1: How Accounting Contributes to Information Used by Citizens, Congress, Federal Executives, and Program Managers**



- 
170. Together with the statement of cash flows, the income statement (or statement of operations or activities) and the balance sheet comprise the three “basic” general purpose financial statements for privately owned entities. Other statements, such as a comparison of actual results with the budget, may be regarded as part of the basic statements for governmental entities.
171. At the initial stage of the accounting process, the information about assets and liabilities is merely the result of assigning all or part of the value of certain transactions to the future. “Assets” and “liabilities” at this stage are *not* statements about future benefits or sacrifices that can be proven or disproven. They are allocations of the cost of past transactions based on assumptions about future benefit and sacrifice.
172. This has been a common source of confusion when accountants communicate with nonaccountants, for whom the word “asset” typically implies something of value that can be sold or used. Much of the evolution of accounting under the FASB and the GASB has been to reduce this confusion, to improve communication, and to make financial reports more faithfully represent economic reality in terms meaningful to report users. This evolution has involved adding increasing amounts of information to the core set of transaction data. That process is discussed later.
173. In other words, the amount of “equity” or “net assets” based on the core data in a bookkeeper’s trial balance is not a direct *measure* of either the market value or the service potential of the entity. In some circumstances, however, net assets can be a meaningful *indicator* of that value or potential. (The word “indicator” is used deliberately to avoid the implication of precision that may be associated with the word “measure.”)<sup>14</sup>
174. Accounting data may be further assigned, allocated, or associated with units of activity or production, segments of organizations, etc., *within the same time period*. These kinds of *intraproduct* allocations are developed most extensively in the branch of accounting called cost or managerial accounting. Neither the FASB nor the GASB has devoted much attention to this branch of accounting, but the FASAB, because of its unique mission, will need to do so. One reason for performing cost accounting is to assist in performance measurement.

---

<sup>14</sup>The term “measure” is commonly used in accounting literature regarding cost and in other literature (including the GASB’s) regarding performance. This document follows that practice. In a conceptual discussion, however, it is important to note that “cost,” “performance,” and “financial condition” are all multidimensional concepts. It may be more precise to think in terms of multiple indicators that provide information about these concepts instead of a single-valued “measure” of any of them.

---

---

## Nonfinancial Core Data

175. Traditionally, financial accountants record and describe transactions in terms of money. At the most detailed level, however, their records usually include information about the associated physical inputs and outputs of goods, labor, etc. This nonfinancial information is an important part of the data available for reporting and evaluating the economy and efficiency of the organization's performance.

---

## Budgetary Core Data

176. In government the data on transactions with other entities include information on the budget authority, obligations, outlays, receipts, and offsetting collections for the transactions. This information is maintained in what are called budgetary accounts to distinguish them from the "proprietary" accounts that record other information on transactions. The budgetary and proprietary accounts at this level are said to be "integrated." In effect, they maintain information about different stages of a transaction.

---

## Financial Environmental Data And The Concept Of Financial Position

177. The core set of accounting data is expanded with a variety of what may be called "environmental" data to distinguish them from the data that arise from transactions (flows of resources or promises) with other entities. Box 2 in figure 1 depicts this step of the accounting and reporting process. Many events within the environment of a reporting entity may have economic consequences for the entity. Examples of environmental data that may be relevant to financial reporting for some purposes include current market prices, net realizable values, changes in discount (interest) rates, and impairment of assets (either in terms of market value or in terms of service potential). Judgments about what environmental data should be added are made by considering the specific information needed for specific purposes.

178. At this level of the accounting and financial reporting process, the information reported in the balance sheet transcends bookkeeping. It can now represent more of what is known about future economic benefits and sacrifices. To the extent that this is accomplished, the balance sheet may be said to represent the "financial position" of the reporting entity. The concept of financial position is that of a point-in-time snapshot of an entity's economic resources and the claims on those resources.

---

---

## Nonfinancial Environmental Information

179. Nonfinancial information about program efforts, accomplishments, and outcomes may be collected and associated with the financial environmental data. This information is particularly important for governments because there is no direct analogue to “net income” or “earnings” to gauge the economy, efficiency, and effectiveness or net value of governmental activity.

---

## The Concept Of Financial Condition

180. As more environmental data are added to the core data, a concept that is broader and more forward-looking than “financial position” emerges. That concept is “financial condition.” For the U.S. government, the additional data could include financial and nonfinancial information about current conditions and reasonable expectations regarding the national and even the global society. For example, the expected implications of environmental degradation; the relative competitiveness and productivity of the U.S. economy; or expected changes in the population’s composition in terms of age, gender, longevity, education, health, and income all might affect judgments about the government’s financial condition.

181. Information about financial condition can be conveyed in a variety of schedules, notes, projections, and narrative disclosures. Among the most important of these is management’s “discussion and analysis” of known trends, demands, commitments, events, and uncertainties. For federal reporting entities, management’s discussion and analysis might address such topics as

- budgetary compliance;
- internal control systems;
- capital resources and investments;
- service efforts, accomplishments, and results of operations; and
- the reasonably possible future impact of known trends, risks, demands, commitments, events, or uncertainties that may affect future operations.<sup>15</sup>

182. Increasingly, managers and investors in the private sector are attending to other factors that may sometimes be useful indicators of an entity’s financial condition, including such intangible factors as the quality of the entity’s

---

<sup>15</sup>Such a discussion and analysis is required in federal financial reports prepared pursuant to the CFO Act of 1990. In these reports, the discussion and analysis is referred to as the “overview” section. OMB Bulletin 92-03 provides guidance on preparing the overview section.

- 
- information and analysis capabilities,
  - strategic planning,
  - human resource development and management, and
  - constituent satisfaction.

Similar factors may be relevant for many federal reporting entities.

---

## Kinds Of Financial Information Needed And Provided

183. The information produced by these accounting processes supports the overall reporting process. Traditionally, the items of information included in financial statements are classified in various “elements” of financial reporting, such as “assets,” “liabilities,” “revenues,” or “expenses.” In future projects, the FASAB may consider the definition of elements of federal financial reporting. For the purposes of this Statement of Concepts, however, it is not necessary to do so. It is sufficient to note that needed financial information identified by some current and potential users of federal financial reports can be classified under six broad headings:

- information on the sources and uses of budgetary resources,
- information about operations and the related resources,
- information about the government’s assets,
- information about the government’s liabilities and financial responsibilities,
- information that addresses concerns with the future, and
- Information that discloses the levels of financial controls.

184. Examples and further discussion of such information needs are provided in appendix B.

---

## How This Information Flows Into Financial Reports

185. The core and environmental financial information, often supplemented with information from other sources, is the basis for a variety of general purpose and special purpose reports. For this reason, figure 1 culminates with the preparation of useful reports. A direct relationship exists between the accounting and reporting processes both for *general purpose* financial reports and for *budget execution* reports. The dotted line in figure 1 leading to other kinds of reports emphasizes that other kinds of information are often more heavily involved in producing them. Accounting contributes to these reports but has less influence over the nature, scope, and content of them. (Appendix C lists selected federal reports that are regularly prepared.)

---

---

## Relationship Of Financial Reporting To Budgeting

186. “The budget” is a broad term that may include, among other things, a projection of spending authorities and means of financing them for a future period and a report of the actual spending and associated financing for a past period. The FASAB’s recommendations may influence the reporting of actual budgetary data.
187. The Budget of the United States Government is the most widely recognized and used financial report of the federal government. The budget process is the government’s principal mechanism for reaching agreement on goals, for allocating resources among competing uses, and for assessing the government’s fiscal effects on economic stability and growth. Most attention is paid to these future-oriented roles of the budget.
188. Budget execution is designed to control and track tax receipts and the use of resources according to the purposes for which budget authority was approved. Actual receipts, obligations, and outlays are recorded by account, as is the status of budgetary resources at the end of each fiscal year.
189. Budgetary measurement is designed to assist in the control and allocation of resources by showing the cash outlays implied by each decision when the decision is made. In some cases, the budget now also includes accruals for costs in advance of the required cash outlay. Budgetary concepts are under continual review. They may be changed by law or, after consultation with the Congress, in the annual revision of OMB Circular A-11, “Preparation and Submission of Budget Estimates.”
190. The Board’s authority does not extend to recommending budgetary standards or budgetary concepts, but the Board is committed to providing reliable accounting information that supports budget planning and formulation. The Board also supports efforts to ensure the accuracy and reliability of reporting on the budget.
191. The Board’s own focus is on developing generally accepted accounting standards for reporting on the financial operations, financial position, and financial condition of the federal government and its component entities and other useful financial information. This implies a variety of measures of costs and other information that complements the information available in the budget. Together with budgetary reports, these reports will provide a more comprehensive and insightful understanding of the government’s financial position, results of operations, and financial condition than either set of reports alone.

---

---

## Chapter 8: How Financial Reporting Supports Reporting On Operating Performance

192. The second objective and its subobjectives concern reporting on performance. References to measuring cost pervade this objective and its supporting narrative. The topics of cost and performance measurement are related because it is by associating cost with activities or “cost objectives” that accounting can make much of its contribution to reporting on performance.
193. Setting performance targets is a function of management, not of accountants. That is, elected and appointed officials, including both program and policy officials, decide what the government will do, how much the government will do, and how it will be done. These officials consider the relevant constraints and other factors when establishing the performance targets. Measuring performance against those goals is an essential part of management. On the other hand, measuring cost is an important part of measuring performance, and measuring cost and reporting the results is a function of accounting and the financial reporting system. Financial reporting standards deal with what information is reported and how it is reported, not with the target levels of performance.
194. This Chapter first discusses cost measurement in general terms, then outlines a framework for reporting on performance to show how cost information can assist in that endeavor. Both cost measurement and performance measurement are complex subjects. Difficult problems arise during attempts to implement the ideas involved. For example, meaningful interpretation may require disaggregation of information, or adjustment of targets for differences in client characteristics, for local conditions, and for other factors beyond the government’s control. Such problems are beyond the scope of this conceptual document. This Statement does not purport to present a comprehensive discussion of how to measure cost or performance. Neither does this Statement address the problems of implementation; it merely shows the relationship between financial reporting and performance reporting in conceptual terms.

---

### Cost Measurement

195. As used in this Statement of Concepts, “cost” is the monetary value of the resources used. Thus far, the FASAB has considered the recognition and measurement of certain assets and liabilities that could influence the amount of cost recognized in a given period by a federal reporting entity. For example, the Board’s Statement on *Accounting for Direct Loans and Loan Guarantees* implements accrual accounting for these programs, similar to the accrual budgeting mandated for them by the Credit Reform Act of 1990.

---

196. A “cost objective” is a program, a function, an activity, an organizational subdivision, a contract, or another work unit for which cost data are desired and for which provision is made to accumulate and measure the cost of processes, products, jobs, capital projects, etc. The basic premise of cost accounting has been described by saying that the measurement, assignment, and allocation of costs to cost objectives should be based on the beneficial or causal relationship between those costs and the cost objectives. In defining the proper measurement, assignment, and allocation of cost for a given purpose, selecting the appropriate accounting method and whether to use full costing should be carefully considered.

### Method of Accounting

197. The accrual basis of accounting generally provides a better matching of costs to the production of goods and services, but its use and application for any given purpose must be carefully evaluated.

### Full Costing

198. Full assignment of all costs of a period, including general and administrative expenses and all other indirect costs, is an important basis for measuring cost of service. However, full cost is not necessarily the relevant cost for making all decisions. For example, incremental cost is more appropriate for many kinds of decisions, while opportunity cost is more appropriate for others. Similarly, cost that is controllable at a given management level is more appropriate for most evaluations of the performance of those managers. Accordingly, accounting systems should permit the calculation of the relevant costs needed for a range of decisions, as determined by the specific situation, and financial reports should reflect costs suitable to the purpose intended.

---

### Performance Measurement

199. Performance reporting is broader than financial reporting, but good financial reporting is essential to support performance reporting. The GASB has identified three broad categories of measures for reporting on performance of state and local governmental entities: those that measure service efforts, those that measure service accomplishments, and those that relate efforts to accomplishments. Although some performance measures may not be clearly assignable to one of these categories, the categories are helpful for understanding how and where financial reporting can *contribute to* performance reporting by providing relevant financial information.

---

200. To clarify this relationship, the FASAB may wish to change or expand parts of the following discussion in future projects. At this time, however, the FASAB believes this basic framework is appropriate for the limited purpose of explaining how financial reporting can contribute to performance reporting.<sup>16</sup>

### Measures of Efforts

201. Efforts are the amount of financial and nonfinancial resources (in terms of money, material, and so forth) that are put into a program or a process. Measures of service efforts also include ratios that compare financial resources with other measures that may indicate potential demand for services, such as the number of potential service recipients.

202. **Financial information** includes financial measures of resources used. They include the cost of salaries, employee benefits, materials and supplies, contract services, equipment, etc., used in providing a service. The FASAB's exposure draft (ED) on *Accounting for Inventory and Related Property* is an example of how the FASAB's recommendations could affect information reported on resources used.

203. **Nonfinancial information** includes the following:

- Number of personnel: Because personnel are a major resource for many federal agencies and programs, indicators that measure the number of full-time equivalent employees or employee-hours used in providing a service often provide a significant measure of resources used.
- Other measures: These may include the amount of equipment (such as number of vehicles) or other capital assets used in providing a service. Because some federal programs use large amounts of capital assets, measures of the use of such assets can be important indicators of resources used.

### Measures of Accomplishments

204. Measures of accomplishments report what was provided and achieved with the resources used. There are two types of measures of accomplishments—outputs and outcomes. Outputs measure the quantity of services provided. Outcomes measure the results of providing those outputs. For some kinds of programs, financial information can provide measures of accomplishments. For example, for some government business-type activities, just as for profit-seeking businesses, the revenue earned can be used as an indicator of

---

<sup>16</sup>The following discussion is based largely on the GASB's *Preliminary Views on Service Efforts and Accomplishments Reporting*, December, 1992.

---

accomplishments. In most government programs, however, the important indicators of accomplishments are based on nonfinancial information, as discussed below.

205. **Outputs**, which can be measured in these ways:

- Quantity of service provided: These indicators measure the physical quantity of a service provided.
- Quantity of a service provided that meets a certain quality requirement: These indicators measure the physical quantity of a service provided that meets a specified criterion or a set of criteria. (Quality requirements can also be defined and measured regarding inputs.)

206. **Outcomes**, for which indicators measure accomplishments or results that occur (at least partially) because of the service efforts. Some authorities use terms like “impact,” “effect,” or “results” to distinguish the change in outcomes specifically caused by the governmental activity from the total change in outcomes that can be caused by many factors. Though it is not always feasible, in theory performance evaluation should focus on results or effects in the sense of impacts, i.e., on the differences between program outcomes and the outcomes that would have occurred in the absence of the program. Results also include measures of public perceptions of outcomes.

207. Outcome measures are particularly useful when presented as comparisons with previous years, established targets, goals and objectives, generally accepted norms and standards (in the sense of “targets”), other parts of the entity, or other comparable entities.

208. Sometimes, the secondary and/or unintended effects of a service on the service recipients, community, or nation can be identified and may warrant reporting.

### Measures That Relate Efforts to Accomplishments

209. For profit-seeking entities and for some business-type government programs, the amount of net income can be thought of as a single indicator that relates organizational efforts to accomplishments. For most government activities, however, relating efforts with accomplishments in a meaningful manner is more complex. Two types of such indicators are discussed below.

- Efficiency measures that relate efforts to outputs of services: These indicators measure the financial resources used or the cost (in dollars, employee-hours, or equipment) per unit of output. They provide information about the production of an output at a given level of resource use and demonstrate an entity’s relative efficiency when compared with previous results, established goals and objectives, generally accepted norms or targets, or results achieved by similar entities.

- 
- Effectiveness or cost-outcome measures that relate efforts to the outcomes or results of services: These measures report the cost per unit of outcome or result. They relate costs and results to help managers, executives, Congress, and citizens assess the value of the services provided by an entity.

210. As is evident, financial or cost information is an important component of both types of measures that attempt to relate efforts to accomplishments.

### Limitations of Performance Measurement

211. Performance measurement is an essential part of good management, and performance reporting is an essential part of government accountability. Important limitations and difficulties associated with performance measurement and reporting should be noted, although they cannot be fully explored in a brief outline of the subject such as this. For example, performance usually cannot be fully described by a single measure, indicators of service efforts and accomplishments do not, by themselves, indicate why performance is at the level reported, and reporting quantifiable indicators can sometimes have unintended consequences.
212. For these and other reasons, the three categories of performance measures generally need to be accompanied by suitable explanatory information. Indeed, narrative information is an essential part of reporting on performance. Explanatory information includes both quantitative and narrative information to help report users understand reported measures, assess the reporting entity's performance, and evaluate the significance of underlying factors that may have affected the reported performance. (As noted, the reporting entity may be the federal government as a whole or any of its component reporting entities.) Explanatory information can include, for example, information about factors substantially outside the entity's control, as well as information about factors over which the entity has significant control.

---

---

## Appendix A: Basis For Conclusions

---

### Introduction

213. This appendix summarizes some of the considerations that were deemed significant by members of the Board in reaching the conclusions in this Statement. It includes reasons for accepting certain approaches and for rejecting others. Individual Board members gave greater weight to some factors than to others.
214. The Board used several methods to arrive at the knowledge base and conclusions that shape this Statement. Its staff conducted focus group discussions, interviewed users and preparers of financial information, and performed other research.
215. Based on this work, the Board published an exposure draft on January 8, 1993, as called for by the Board's rules of procedure. Forty-six letters were received in response. The Board also held a public hearing on the exposure draft on April 21-22, 1993, at which it received valuable comments.
216. The Board wishes to thank everyone who participated in the process.

---

### Relationship Between Financial Reporting And The Budget

217. The Board considered whether it should modify the exposure draft's discussion of the relationship between financial reporting and the budget. Several respondents commented on this subject, but often in different ways. Some alluded to budgetary and proprietary (or "accrual" or "financial") accounting in a context that implied each should be on a different basis but reported in an integrated fashion. Others suggested that using the same basis for reporting and for budgeting was essential to achieve the objectives stated for federal financial reporting.
218. Many recommendations have been made over the years that information on expenditures be arranged to permit better perception of the relationship between the expenditures and national policy objectives. Some of those recommendations have related to the budget. Some have called for an "accrual-basis" budget. Those who would like to change the organization and/or the basis of the budget, e.g., to more of a "program" organization or to more of an "accrual" basis, might regard financial reporting from a program perspective and/or on an accrual basis as a valuable first step before considering restructuring the budget.

- 
219. Others may have fundamentally different views. For example, some believe there is merit in maintaining a distinction between accrual accounting and budgeting, except to the extent that those involved in preparing and approving the budget elect to use an accrual convention, as in the Credit Reform Act of 1990. These persons believe that the budgetary basis of measurement should, in principle, sometimes be different from the accrual basis. They infer this from the different purposes of budgeting and financial reporting.
220. The Board concluded that there was no reason to change the discussion of this topic in this Statement, because the Board has no jurisdiction regarding the budget.

---

## State And Local Governments And Other Nonfederal Entities

221. Some respondents expressed concern about the potential impact of federal accounting standards on state and local governmental accounting. These respondents would like to minimize the cost of compliance with federal requirements. To the extent possible, they would like to avoid the need to report on a basis different from that specified by the GASB. Presumably their comments dealt with general purpose reporting because grantees must now prepare various special purpose reports pursuant to the requirements of granting agencies, OMB, the Single Audit Act, etc.
222. The FASAB has no intent to recommend standards for general purpose external financial reporting by nonfederal entities. The FASAB's mission is to consider and recommend accounting principles for the federal government. The FASAB's work, therefore, will have no direct effect on nonfederal entities. It is true, however, that the FASAB's recommendations could eventually result in increased demand for information from recipients of federal funds. This could happen when such information was necessary for federal reporting entities to achieve the stated objectives of federal financial reporting. Such requirements would be "special purpose" reporting requirements, from the perspective of grant and contract recipients.
223. These requirements most likely would be imposed by program officials in contracts and grant agreements with the recipients of the federal funds. The Board acknowledges that the federal government has a responsibility to consider the cost imposed on nonfederal entities when making decisions to impose such requirements. At the same time, benefits to all entities and to all citizens involved also must be considered.

---

## Reporting On Performance And Using Nonfinancial Information

224. Most respondents who addressed reporting on performance supported the exposure draft, but some thought the language was too encompassing. The Board concluded that their

---

concern was stimulated in part by the wording of the first three objectives in the exposure draft. Each began with the phrase “federal financial reporting should assist...” However, each of these objectives subsequently included a phrase “Federal financial reporting should enable the reader to determine...” that perhaps implied more than the Board intended.

225. Accordingly, the Board substituted the phrase “provide information that helps the reader...” for “enable...” The Board also made certain other changes recommended by some respondents. In particular, the Statement now uses the phrase “performance target” to refer to desired levels of performance defined by elected and appointed officials. This term is used instead of “performance standard” to avoid possible confusion with “financial reporting standards,” which deal with what information is to be reported in designated reports and with how it is reported.

226. The Statement also makes it clear that performance targets should be set by program and policy officials working together. Financial officials have a role to play in this process, especially where financial data are involved. That role is based on their expertise in cost measurement and their responsibility to ensure the integrity of the data.

227. One authority on public administration has explained the relationship in this way:

Government accountants are responsible in part for capturing, reporting, and analyzing actual financial information important for both policy making and management. Policy analysts and budget professionals deal primarily with what should occur and accountants deal primarily with capturing and recording what did occur. In addition, government accountants have auditors reviewing their work professionally to further ensure the integrity of the accounting process.<sup>17</sup>

228. The Board believes that accounting supports financial reporting and that, in the government, financial reporting goes hand in hand with accountability and performance evaluation. Financial accounting and financial reporting have a special role in assuring compliance with finance-related requirements for transactions. This is most directly relevant to objectives 1 and 4.

229. Financial reporting, however, also provides useful information about costs, assets, and liabilities. This information is especially relevant to objectives 2 and 3. Routine reporting of outputs, outcomes, and their costs is an important part of a performance monitoring system. Assessments of impacts (also referred to as effects, or results) specifically caused by governmental action are more likely to be performed in less-frequent program evaluations

---

<sup>17</sup>Thomas D. Lynch, “President’s Column,” *ASPA Times*, vol. 16, No. 6 (June 1, 1993), p. 5.

---

and special studies. Those studies draw upon the output, outcome, and cost information that is (or should be) more frequently published.

230. Federal accounting and financial reporting exist within the context of various laws intended to foster accountability and performance evaluation. Neither the FASAB nor federal financial reporting can independently accomplish the objectives of evaluating performance or assuring accountability, but they can contribute to achieving them. Furthermore, to make their essential contribution to these ends, accountants, auditors, and financial managers must understand the overall framework for achieving these objectives.
231. For nongovernmental entities, competitive markets for goods, services, and capital provide an independent assessment of the economy, efficiency, and effectiveness with which those entities use resources to meet their customers' needs. There is no similar proof of value for federal output independent of the political process. To report on the results of operations of a governmental entity, nonfinancial information is essential, in conjunction with financial information.
232. In concept, this fact could imply that a complete financial report of a federal reporting entity should include indicators of economy, efficiency, and cost effectiveness if the report is to fairly present the entity's financial position and results of operations. Paragraph 164 notes that financial or cost information is an important component of both types of measures that attempt to relate efforts to accomplishments. In practice, the extent to which it is feasible and cost effective to present such information can be decided only after careful study of the specific circumstances.
233. While specific decisions will require further study, the Board notes its belief that any attempt to demonstrate accountability beyond probity (level 5) and process (level 4) requires performance measures.<sup>18</sup> The Board's user needs study, its public hearings, and similar sources of information suggest a widespread belief that the federal government needs to make a more systematic attempt to measure and report outputs, outcomes (including impacts), and the costs of producing them. To do this, the Board believes, accounting and financial reporting play an essential part throughout the cycle of planning, budgeting, financial management, and evaluation of federal activities.

---

<sup>18</sup>Levels of accountability are discussed in Chapter 3.

---

---

## Stewardship

234. A few respondents said that the stewardship objective described in the exposure draft was too broad. They felt that information on the effects on the nation of policy decisions was outside the scope of federal financial reporting. The Board concluded that this concern—like the preceding one regarding reporting on performance—stemmed in part from the wording and structure of the first three objectives in the exposure draft.
235. Accordingly, the Board substituted the phrase “provide information that helps . . .” for “enable . . .” As noted earlier, federal financial reporting cannot by itself accomplish the objectives of evaluating or assuring stewardship; it can only contribute to those goals.
236. The Board notes that the federal government has two levels of stewardship. One is for its own assets and liabilities and its ongoing ability to operate. The other is its constitutional responsibility for the nation’s wealth and well-being. It is unique in this respect. If the nation’s wealth and well-being are deteriorating, the government’s financial condition is, or soon will be, deteriorating also—and vice versa. The financial condition of a sovereign national government and that of the nation itself are inextricably intertwined. Some information about the overall context must be provided, therefore, when reporting on the government as a whole, and perhaps when reporting on selected programs. As explained in Chapter 1, the FASAB does not recommend standards for economic reporting, but it may consider whether such information should be included in certain financial reports.

---

## Systems And Control

237. Most respondents who addressed the fourth objective, originally titled “Deterring Fraud Waste and Abuse,” supported the exposure draft, though some suggested that it could be phrased in a more positive fashion. Several emphasized the need for this objective and for standards to achieve it, but a few thought that internal control should not be regarded as an element of financial reporting. Others suggested that a separate objective on this topic was not necessary because it could be inferred from the other objectives.
238. The Board agreed that the objective should be stated in more positive terms. Accordingly, it replaced “Deterring Fraud, Waste, and Abuse” with the new heading “Systems and Control” and made other changes in wording the objective. With regard to the fundamental point, however, the Board continues to believe that systems and control are topics of sufficient importance and relevance to warrant addressing in their own right.
239. The Board’s user needs study, public hearings, and other sources of information make abundantly clear that users want assurance that reported information is credible and

---

reliable. They also want to know that reasonable controls are in place to deter fraud, waste, and abuse. Independent audit can help provide this assurance, but whether information is audited or not, effective systems and controls are essential to providing such assurance in a cost-effective way. Furthermore, effective systems and controls are essential to achieving the other objectives.

240. Perhaps the unique contribution of accounting-based reports for objectives 1 and 4 is the “core” accounting data base on transactions, especially on controlled transactions subject to finance-related restrictions. Systems of accounting control are integral parts of this special role for financial reporting. Similarly, regarding objective 2 and, to some extent, objective 3, systems and controls are important because direct observation of outcomes and impacts is often infeasible or expensive. In these cases, reliance on accounting and administrative controls to ensure compliance with good practices and processes is often a cost-effective surrogate for trying to measure the value added by governmental activities.
241. Finally, the fundamental notion of accountability pervades the entire set of objectives. Effective systems and controls are essential prerequisites to accountable government. Thus, the Board regards systems and controls as an integral part of accounting, accountability, and financial reporting.

---

## Dual Focus On Internal And External Users

242. Several respondents mentioned users, but no consensus about a change to the exposure draft was evident. For example, some respondents urged greater emphasis on the information needs of external users or on objectives of general purpose, external financial reporting. Others urged greater emphasis on information needs of lower-level program managers and employees. These comments are not necessarily contradictory, nor are the competing perspectives necessarily mutually exclusive. The Board continues to believe that it must consider both external and internal users. The Board itself is the agent of officials who, in turn, are agents of the public. This organizational fact contributes to the dual focus.
243. Also, as noted in Chapter 1, the distinction between internal and external users is not clear for the federal government. Except in degree of detail, virtually all federal financial information is of interest to at least some segments of the public.
244. The Board acknowledges that this dual focus will often create the need to balance various considerations to arrive at an optimal result. For example, as one respondent properly noted, there could be a danger of emphasizing what he termed “comparable consistency” for uniform reporting to users who want comparable information across agencies. He was concerned that this might interfere with “relevant customization” of information systems to meet the unique needs of agencies in response to their specific environments. It is

---

understood that “comparable consistency” of information is needed for some purposes and “relevant customization” for others.

245. The Board is primarily concerned with the former class of uses and reports, i.e., with ensuring the provision of comparable data where it is relevant and cost-effective to do so. Individual preparers often are not in a good position to judge the cost-benefit ratio of such information governmentwide. They are aware of the costs they incur to produce information, but they often are not aware of the potential benefit of producing that information. Neither are they in a position to establish standards that would produce such information.
246. On the other hand, there should be less need for outsiders like the Board or its sponsors to mandate relevant customization within agencies. Presumably each preparer can and will take care of that, provided that resources are available to do so and that there are no bureaucratic impediments.
247. In *concept*, therefore, there need be no conflict between “comparable consistency” and “relevant customization.” Furthermore, in *theory*, properly designed accounting systems should facilitate both internal and external reporting. In *practice*, however, because administrative resources for information processing systems are limited and because new systems take time to install, externally-imposed requirements for comparable consistency could compete with addressing internally perceived needs for relevant customization. The Board acknowledges this trade-off. This is just one of many cost-benefit factors that the Board will need to consider as it addresses each specific issue in subsequent projects.

---

## Objectives For Governmentwide And Component Entity Reports

248. Some respondents suggested there should be separate sets of objectives for governmentwide and component entity reports. Similarly, it might also be possible to distinguish objectives for reporting by organizational unit components from those for functional or program components. Alternatively, one might imagine separate sets of objectives for reports to different audiences. The Board concluded that different reports are likely to emphasize different objectives but that there is no need to prepare separate statements of objectives. The Board will give due consideration to variations in emphasis among the objectives for different types of reports in subsequent statements and projects.

---

---

## Appendix B: Users' Information Needs Addressed By Federal Financial Reporting

249. This appendix is consistent with Chapter 3's discussion of users' needs for financial information. It represents an intermediate step in the Board's consideration of the financial reporting objectives implied by those needs. The appendix is included to aid the reader in understanding the reporting objectives by providing another perspective on the issues.

250. The financial information needs of the four user groups can be classified into six categories:

1. Information on the sources and uses of budgetary resources
2. Information about operations and the related resources
3. Information about the government's assets
4. Information about the government's liabilities and financial responsibilities
5. Information that addresses concerns with the future
6. Information that discloses the levels of financial controls

251. In some cases, the specific nature of the information would be basically the same for all four groups of users; only the level of detail would vary. For example, the amount of unobligated budgetary authority available to be obligated would be of interest to program managers wanting to avoid violations of the Anti-Deficiency Act and to executives wanting to know the availability of budgetary resources that can be reprogrammed for other purposes.<sup>19</sup>

252. In other cases, the specific nature of the information would vary, depending on the reporting entity, the report user and the use to which the information was put. For example, "error rates" could refer to errors in determining the monthly payment an individual was entitled to receive from the government or errors in calculating fees that a company was required to pay the government.

---

### Information On The Sources And Uses Of Budgetary Resources

253. The budget is the starting point for the government's finances. All users want to know the makeup of the budget, i.e., the budget authority, the obligations, the outlays, the receipts and offsetting collections, etc. They want to know how the budget was executed and particularly

---

<sup>19</sup>"Obligations" has a meaning in federal accounting similar to that of "encumbrances" in state and local governmental accounting; that is, it reflects a reservation of appropriated spending authority that will be used to pay for a specific contract, a purchase order, or another item.

---

whether it was executed in accordance with the appropriation statutes and other laws affecting the entity's finances. They want to know the status of the budgetary resources, including the extent of obligated and unobligated budget authority. Finally, they want to know the sufficiency of the budget authority for covering future commitments.

---

## Information About Operations And The Related Resources

254. Accompanying the need for information about budgetary resources is a need for information about the operations of the government's programs. This includes information about the costs of the programs, classified in ways that provide further understanding, such as by program or activity, direct or indirect, fixed and variable, in comparison to estimates, or by object (e.g., personnel). Information that discloses unit, total, and marginal costs and changes in costs is also useful.
255. Cost information reflects the inputs for government services. Equally useful is information about the outputs, outcomes, efficiency, and effectiveness of government services, by themselves or in relation to a budget or goals, and any changes. This would include an identification of the periods in which the accomplishments would be realized. Such information helps form a basis for voting, funding, and management decisions.

---

## Information About The Government's Assets

256. Financial statement users want considerable information about the government's assets. They want to know whether the balances in the trust and revolving funds will be sufficient for fulfilling the fund's purposes. They want to know the nature and amounts of receivables owed the government and whether the receivables will be paid. They are interested in the size and condition of the inventories and whether they can be used as intended or, if not, how much would be received for their disposition. There is much the users want to know about the government's physical assets: their value, their expected service life, the replacement costs, and the impact of the maintenance that has been deferred.
257. The government also holds assets as a custodian or only until the assets can be sold. Examples are seized or forfeited assets. Information about these assets helps to establish accountability for them and to make decisions about the best time and method for their disposal.

---

---

## Information About The Government's Liabilities And Financial Responsibilities

258. Users want to know what the government owes and whether the amounts are short term and precisely definable, long term and only an estimate, or just a contingency related to an enterprise or activity that is not a direct and current government responsibility, e.g., government-sponsored enterprises. This information helps the reader assess the government's ability to continue to operate at its current levels over a period of time and/or whether a tax increase is likely.
259. The changes in the amounts owed from year to year are also important. The user often is willing to settle for (or may actually prefer) ranges rather than point estimates and/or net present values rather than nominal (undiscounted) amounts.

---

## Information That Addresses Concerns With The Future

260. The federal government is responsible for the country's well-being. Its financial actions affect that well-being, both currently and in the future. Thus, users look not just for information to evaluate the condition of the trust funds upon which they rely for future security. They also want information to assess the likelihood of tax increases, service reductions, and changes in the inflation rate.
261. They therefore want information about possible sources of additional financial resources. They want to see the amounts of resources expended on consumption activities in comparison to investment activities, such as research and development. They want information on other growth-stimulating activities. On the other hand, they still want to be able to assess where spending can be reduced significantly.
262. Finally, they want to know the magnitude of the probable future deficits, the cost burden this will place on taxpayers, and the potential effect that this burden might have on the quality of life.

---

## Information That Discloses The Levels Of Financial Controls

263. Because the government spends such large amounts of monies, taxpayers and other citizens are naturally concerned that the resources they supply are being protected from fraud, waste, and abuse and that the errors are minimal. They want to know that controls are in place and operating effectively and that problems are being quickly identified and corrected.

---

They are particularly concerned that identified high risks are addressed and that adequate funds are devoted to eliminating the risk.

264. This concern is not just with the monies expended directly by the government. It also extends to the monies expended by the individuals and organizations that receive government contracts or grants.

---

## Appendix C: Selected Federal Reports Prepared On A Recurring Basis

---

265. This appendix classifies some well-known reports according to the categories set forth in figure 1 in Chapter 7. Reports are classified according to whether they are primarily financial or nonfinancial and whether they have primarily a special or a general purpose. The classification is somewhat subjective. It is based on the general nature or emphasis of the reports. Many reports combine information and functions from different categories.
266. All these reports contribute to meeting the Board's reporting objectives for some users. However, many of the specific reports listed—economic reports dealing with the nation as a whole, for example—will be influenced only indirectly, if at all, by the Board's standards. Indeed, because they deal with transactors other than the government (such as private citizens and corporations, states and local governments, and not-for-profit entities), economic reports fit within the context of figure 1 only to the extent that they may provide information to assess the government's operating performance and stewardship.

---

### Financial Information—Special Purpose

- Budget of the U.S. Government
- Analysis of the President's Budget Proposals (CBO)
- Economic and Budget Outlook Report (CBO)
- Economic and Budget Outlook Report Update (CBO)
- Midsession Review of the Budget
- Budget Enforcement Act Reports: Preview, Update, and Final Sequestration
- Request for Apportionment (SF 132)
- Report on Budget Execution (SF 133)
- Economic Report of the President
- Federal Reserve Bulletin
- OPM Forms 1351 A-D: Work years and personnel costs reports
- Prompt Payment Report

---

### Financial Information—General Purpose

- Annual financial statement (principal financial statements, including footnotes and combining financial statements if applicable) required by the CFO Act on revolving funds, trust funds, substantial commercial functions, and pilot federal agencies
- Annual financial reporting by agencies required by Treasury (SF 220 series)

- 
- Prototype Consolidated Financial Statements of the U.S.
  - The U.S. Government Annual Report and Appendix (Treasury)
  - Monthly Treasury Statement of Receipts and Outlays of the U.S.
  - Monthly Statement of Public Debt
  - Daily Treasury Statement (on cash and debt)

---

### Nonfinancial Information—General Purpose

- Annual departmental reports to the President and Congress
- Nonfinancial information required by the CFO Act in the overview, supplemental information, and other portions of the reports

---

### Nonfinancial Information—Special Purpose

- Reports required by the Federal Managers' Financial Integrity Act of 1982

---

---

# Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts 3: Management's Discussion and Analysis

---

---

## Status

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>Issued</b>                                 | June 8, 1999  |
| <b>Interpretations and Technical Releases</b> |   |
| <b>Affects</b>                                | SFFAC 1, paragraph 181, by providing guidance on MD&A |
| <b>Affected by</b>                            | SFFAS 27, paragraph 39, amends paragraph 26.          |

---

---

## Summary

This document describes the concepts on which the Board relied in recommending standards for Management's Discussion and Analysis (MD&A) to be included in general purpose federal financial reports (GPFFR).<sup>1</sup> Concepts Statements are not authoritative in the sense that they do not establish standards or principles. Preparers may find them useful, but these concepts are not "prescribed guidelines" for required supplementary information as discussed in section 558 of the *Codification of Statements on Auditing Standards* published by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. No standards or prescribed guidelines for MD&A are presented in this statement of concepts.

MD&A is an important vehicle for (1) communicating managers' insights about the reporting entity, (2) increasing the understandability and usefulness of the GPFFR, and (3) providing accessible information about the entity and its operations, service levels, successes, challenges, and future. Some federal agencies also refer to MD&A as the "overview."

The basic concept that underlies the standards for MD&A is:

Each general purpose federal financial report (GPFFR) should include a section devoted to management's discussion and analysis (MD&A). It should address the reporting entity's performance measures, financial statements, systems and controls, compliance with laws and regulations, and actions taken or planned to address problems. The discussion and analysis of these subjects may be based partly on information contained in reports other than the GPFFR. MD&A also should address significant events, conditions, trends and contingencies that may affect future operations.

---

<sup>1</sup>The term general purpose financial report, abbreviated "GPFFR," is used as a generic term to refer to the report that contains the entity's financial statements that are prepared pursuant to federal accounting principles.

---

A separate document titled *Standards for Management's Discussion and Analysis* presents the standards for MD&A. The standards for MD&A say that MD&A should address:

- the entity's mission and organizational structure;
- the entity's performance goals and results;
- the entity's financial statements;
- the entity's systems, controls, and legal compliance; and
- the possible future effects on the entity of existing, currently-known demands, risks, uncertainties, events, conditions and trends.

The discussion and analysis of these subjects may be based on information in other discrete sections of the GPFFR or it may be based on reports separate from the GPFFR. The standards require MD&A to be included in each GPFFR as required supplementary information (RSI).

---

---

## Table of Contents

| <b>Contents</b>   | <b>Page</b> |
|---|-------------|
| <b>Summary</b>  | 1           |
| <b>Statement of Concepts</b>  | 4           |
| <b>Topics for MD&amp;A</b>  | 12          |
| <b>Appendix A: Basis for Conclusions</b>                              | 20          |
| <b>Appendix B: Glossary [see Consolidated Glossary in Appendix E]</b> | 25          |

---

---

## Statement Of Concepts

---

### Basic Concept

1. Each general purpose federal financial report (GPFFR, see figure 1 on 7) should include a section devoted to management's discussion and analysis (MD&A).<sup>1</sup> MD&A should address the reporting entity's program and financial performance measures, financial statements, systems and controls, compliance with laws and regulations, and actions taken or planned to address problems. The discussion and analysis of these subjects may be based partly on information contained in reports other than the GPFFR. MD&A also should address significant events, conditions, trends and contingencies that may affect future operations.

---

### Discussion and Rationale

2. A typical GPFFR is a highly summarized profile of a complex entity. It is based on conditions that exist at the reporting date and events that occurred in the preceding period. It shows what has happened, but it does not explain why it happened or what may reasonably be expected to happen in the future.
3. Financial reports have two key roles. One is a feedback role to provide information used for evaluating past decisions, expectations, and trends. Another is a predictive role to provide information used for formulating expectations and making decisions about the future. Both roles can be enhanced by insights and interpretations from an entity's management.
4. The managers of an entity have detailed knowledge of the transactions, events, and conditions reflected in the entity's financial report and of the policies that govern the entity's operations. The managers also have informed expectations regarding the future based on that knowledge. As a part of their stewardship responsibility, managers should explain the significance of key financial and nonfinancial information shown in the report, the strategies

---

<sup>1</sup>The term general purpose federal financial report, abbreviated "GPFFR," is used as a generic term to refer to the report that contains the entity's financial statements that are prepared and audited pursuant to the CFO Act of 1990, as amended. entities may refer to these reports using different terms, such as "Annual Report," "Accountability Report," "Financial Management report," etc. Paragraphs 54-112 and Appendix 1 of Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts 2, *Entity and Display*, describe and illustrate the contents of the GPFFR. For more information on the "Accountability Report" see paragraph 59 and the glossary. (Other words defined in the glossary are marked with an asterisk.) See also *Toward a Report to Citizens on the State of their Nation and the Performance of Their Government: proceedings of the AGA Task Force on a Report to Citizens on the State of the Nation*, Association of Government Accountants, 1994.

---

that led to the results reported, and the implications for future operations of events that have occurred or are likely to occur. The distinction between “financial” and “nonfinancial” information is arbitrary and often tenuous, but in this context “nonfinancial information” can include information on systems, controls, compliance with laws and regulations, and performance.

5. A Federal reporting entity’s GPFFR should be understandable and useful to a wide audience, not just members of the entity’s management and specialized analysts working for special interest groups, corporations, and other entities affected by the Government’s actions. Therefore, the report should be accompanied by a concise narrative discussion and analysis. Even insiders and specialized analysts often need such a discussion and analysis to understand the report. Communication with a wide audience may require effective use of colors, graphs, photographs, and charts. Reporting understandable, accessible information on the Government’s actions and the effects of its actions helps assure accountability and provides a more “level playing field” on which the public interest can best be served.

---

## Background

6. The Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) has for many years recognized the importance of such a narrative discussion of the financial statements. To serve the interests of investors and creditors, the SEC requires such a narrative discussion and analysis from management of companies under its purview. The SEC wants MD&A to help readers understand the entity’s financial position and results of operations with the benefit of management’s understanding and perspective. The SEC also wants MD&A to go beyond the basic financial statements, to include relevant forward-looking information. Research on MD&A for companies registered with the SEC shows that MD&A adds value to the financial statements. Forward-looking information, for example, can be an important contribution.<sup>2</sup>
7. Several factors suggest that MD&A may be even **more** important for Federal reporting entities than for those in the private sector and may need to be more extensive in scope. These factors include the complexity of Federal operations, the myriad objectives they pursue, and the diverse nature of the groups affected by and interested in the Government’s activities. Fundamentally, the Government’s objective is to provide for the common defense and to promote the general welfare, not to earn a profit. Therefore, reporting on performance and other matters in a way that is understandable to diverse audiences is important. For

---

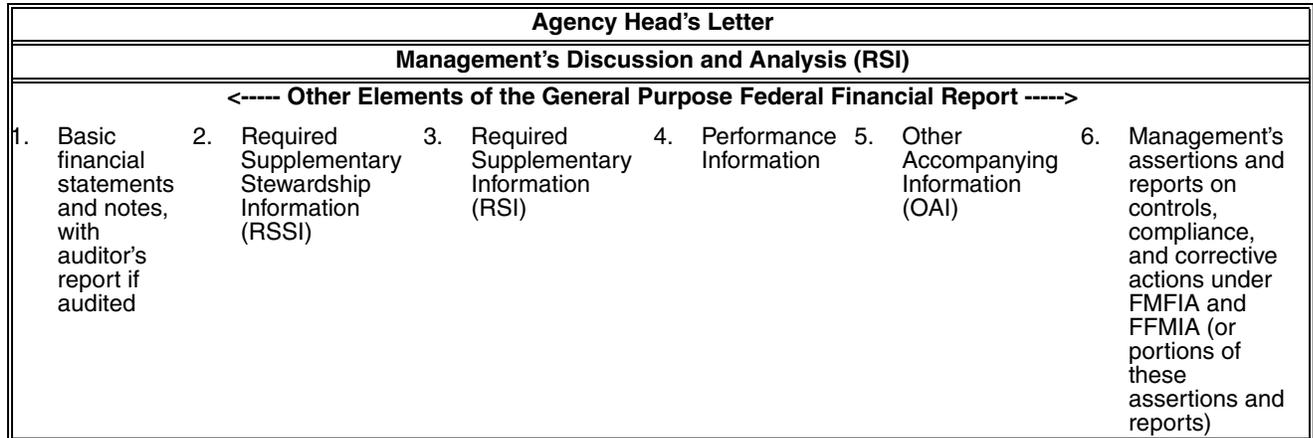
<sup>2</sup>Research on MD&A in private sector financial reporting suggests that forward-looking information in MD&A, in particular, is a significant source of added value for financial analysts. See Stephen H. Bryan, “Incremental Information Content of Required Disclosures Contained in Management Discussion and Analysis,” *The Accounting Review* Vol. 72 No. 2, (April 1997), pp. 285-301.

---

these reasons, both SFFAC 1, *Objectives of Federal Financial Reporting*, and SFFAC 2, *Entity and Display*, refer to MD&A in concept as part of the general purpose federal financial report.

8. Page 7 presents a schematic diagram of a sample GPFFR. It is schematic because the information called for by the statements of federal financial accounting standards should be located in the report in a logical sequence, not necessarily in the order shown. MD&A for the reporting entity as a whole normally will be located immediately after the agency head's letter. Reporting entities that organize their GPFFR by responsibility segment may combine MD&A regarding each segment; alternatively, they may have MD&A for each responsibility segment located separately in each of the respective subsections of the report. Preparers have flexibility to structure their report in the manner most appropriate under the circumstances. This diagram, the entire statement of concepts, and the accompanying standards for MD&A are intentionally written in general terms, in light of the evolving practice of performance reporting and accountability reporting in the federal government. The standards for MD&A define in general terms required supplementary information that should accompany financial statements prepared in conformance with federal accounting principles.

**FIGURE 1: Schematic Diagram of a Sample General Purpose Federal Financial Report**



The GPFFR is represented by MD&A plus columns 1-6 of the diagram. (The agency head's letter is part of the GPFFR by general practice, though it is not required by federal accounting principles.) This is not a literal depiction of the organization of a report. Information should be presented in a logical arrangement. MD&A will address major issues that are typically reported in more detail in the discrete sections of the GPFFR or in other publicly available reports that the GPFFR incorporates by reference. Incorporating another report by reference does not, by itself, mean that the separate report is subject to audit.

Unless law or managerial action requires more extensive audit review or examination of the material incorporated by reference, the FASAB expects that the auditor of the financial statements will treat the material incorporated by reference as other accompanying information, although it does not physically accompany the GPFFR. OMB has authority to provide specific guidance on the auditor's minimum responsibility regarding this material. OMB may, for example, direct auditors to treat the material incorporated by reference as if it were other accompanying information in an auditor-submitted document.

SFFAC 2 (paragraphs 106-111 and Appendix 1-F) calls for a "Statement of Performance Measures" as part of the GPFFR, but FASAB has not yet recommended standards for it. Other titles may be used for this section of the GPFFR. Performance indicators included in the GPFFR will either be those in the entity's annual performance report under the Government Performance and Results Act of 1993 (GPRA or the Results Act) or a subset of them.

Alternatively, that report may be incorporated by reference. Until further guidance is available, the agency should select the indicators to report in consultation with OMB.

The assertions and report on control called for by the Federal Managers Financial Integrity Act (FMFIA or Integrity Act) would not be stated in full in MD&A. They would be reported in a discrete section of the GPFFR or incorporated in the GPFFR by reference. They are within the scope of MD&A because highly important aspects of systems, compliance, and internal controls should be discussed in MD&A. "Highly important" in this context may imply a higher threshold than "materiality" for the financial statements.

If the report also includes financial statements for component entities (bureaus, responsibility segments, etc.), management should use its judgment in organizing the report. The component entities' financial statements may be discussed in separate sections of the report or as subsections of MD&A of the consolidated entity.

9. MD&A should address:

- the entity's structure, mission, goals, and objectives, with indicators<sup>3</sup> of its performance;
- actions taken or planned to improve performance, when appropriate;
- the financial statements;
- systems, internal controls<sup>\*4</sup> and legal compliance, including corrective action taken or planned; and
- the future effects of existing, currently- known demands, risks, uncertainties, events, conditions and trends. MD&A may also address the possible future effects of anticipated\* future demands, events, conditions, trends, etc. that management believes would be important to the reader of the report.

10. MD&A should address these subjects even if, as will be true for many Federal reporting entities, separate documents report much of the information in more detail. Information about these subjects is essential to address the objectives of federal financial reporting regarding performance, stewardship, budgetary integrity, and systems and controls.

The following paragraphs explain the implications of this.

11. Regarding the entity's mission and performance, MD&A should inform the reader how well the reporting entity is doing. This means that it should tell the reader what the reporting entity and its programs have accomplished, and how well the entity is managing its programs. To do this, MD&A should answer such questions as:

- What do we need to know to gauge operating success?
- How do we measure what we accomplished?
- What do the measurements show?

12. To understand the information on performance, systems, controls, and legal compliance, it typically is necessary to understand something about the reporting entity's organizational structure, mission, and strategic plan. Accordingly, MD&A should concisely inform the reader about these topics.

13. Reporting information that helps people assess the performance of the Government's programs and organizations is an important objective of Federal financial reporting. For

---

<sup>3</sup>This document uses the terms "performance measure" and "performance indicator" synonymously. Some people use the term "performance indicator" instead of "performance measure" because the performance of government programs typically involves several factors or dimensions, and many of these dimensions of performance cannot be measured precisely.

<sup>4</sup>Words marked with \* are defined in the glossary.

governmental entities, in contrast to profit-seeking entities, the financial result of governmental-type activities is rarely an adequate indicator of performance. (For a few governmental entities, mainly those that conduct primarily business-type instead of governmental-type activities, the financial results of operations may be an important, albeit rarely sufficient, performance indicator.) To assess performance, people need additional information on the consequences of the Government's activities. For a competitive, profit-seeking entity, the value of its products or services is measured by the amount of money customers are willing voluntarily to pay for them. In such a situation, the traditional income statement reports on both the efforts (measured by expenses incurred) and the accomplishments (measured by revenue earned) of the entity. For government, expense reflects efforts, as it does in the private sector, but indicators other than revenue must be used to report on accomplishments. A discrete section of the GPFFR therefore presents indicators of accomplishments (such as indicators of outputs and outcomes) and other indicators of performance. Alternatively, the GPFFR incorporates performance indicators by reference to a separate report such as the Annual Performance Report required by the Results Act. Either way, performance information is an integral part of the GPFFR and should be discussed in MD&A. Management's discussion and analysis should therefore address the most important facets of performance as well as the financial statements and supplementary information.

14. Regarding the financial statements, MD&A should answer questions such as the following, to the extent that they are relevant and important for the entity:
- What is the entity's financial position? What is its financial condition?<sup>5</sup> How did this come about?
  - What were the significant variations:
    - from prior years?
    - from the budget?<sup>6</sup>
    - from performance plans, long-term plans, or other relevant plans in addition to the budget?
  - What is the potential effect of these factors, of changed circumstances, and of expected future trends? In other words, to the extent that it is feasible to project the effects of these factors, will future financial position, condition, and results, as reflected in future financial statements, probably be different from this year's and, if yes, why? (Any such

---

<sup>5</sup>The traditional concepts of "financial position" and "financial condition" are typically applicable to revolving funds, Government corporations, and other reporting entities that are intended to be self-financing. The concepts may be less relevant, or may require some qualification or modification, for other kinds of Federal reporting entities.

<sup>6</sup>Management should use its judgment to decide what variances are relevant for MD&A. It will not always be essential or appropriate to discuss all variances.

---

discussion should acknowledge that the future is unpredictable and will be influenced by factors outside the reporting entity's control, including actions by Congress.)

15. Regarding systems and controls, MD&A should tell the reader whether internal accounting and administrative controls (some authorities prefer the term “management controls”) are adequate to ensure that:
- transactions are executed in accordance with budgetary and financial laws and other requirements, consistent with the purposes authorized, and are recorded in accordance with Federal accounting standards;
  - assets are properly acquired and used, safeguarded to deter theft, accidental loss or unauthorized disposition, and fraud; and
  - performance measurement information is adequately supported.
16. Reporting information that helps people assess the condition of the entity's management systems and of the relevant internal controls is an important objective of Federal financial reporting. The relevant internal controls for this purpose are those that support reporting on financial and operating performance and reporting on compliance with applicable laws.<sup>7</sup> The great diversity of people (often with competing interests) affected by governmental action, and the fact that governments function within and by means of a framework of laws, mean that more attention to these matters is necessary than in financial reports for profit-seeking entities.
17. An entity's ability to prepare auditable financial statements and other reliable reports for management from the entity's books and records is a positive signal about the finance-related systems and controls of that entity. By themselves, however, the financial statements of a governmental entity do not provide adequate information about the status of the entity's management systems and internal controls that support reporting on financial and operating performance and reporting on compliance with applicable laws. For these reasons, the GPFFR of a Federal reporting entity should include information about systems, internal controls, and legal compliance, in addition to the basic financial statements. This information—like the information on performance—is presented in a discrete section of the GPFFR; alternatively it may be incorporated in the GPFFR by reference to separate reports such as those required by the Integrity Act. MD&A should therefore address the most important facets of this information on systems, controls and legal compliance, as well as the financial statements, supplementary information, and performance information.

---

<sup>7</sup>Internal controls are also relevant to other objectives. For example, controls help management assure efficient and effective use of resources for the purpose intended. They also support preparation of performance reports pursuant to GPRA. See, for example, paragraph 40.

---

---

## Relationship to Other Reports

18. The information in the GPFFR about systems, internal controls, and legal compliance (column 6 in figure 1) may include the assertions and a summary of the reports on controls, legal compliance, and corrective actions pursuant to the Integrity Act and the Federal Financial Management Improvement Act (FFMIA), or those reports may be incorporated by reference. This information should be presented in conformance with guidelines published by OMB. MD&A, in turn, should discuss the most important aspects of the information on these topics. Referring to separately-issued reports on systems and controls does not eliminate the need to discuss these topics in MD&A.<sup>8</sup>
19. The performance information (column 4 in figure 1) may include the indicators in an entity's performance report pursuant to the Results Act or a selection of the most important performance indicators. Alternatively, a separate performance report may be incorporated by reference. This information should be presented in conformance with guidelines published by OMB. MD&A, in turn, will discuss the most important aspects of the performance information. Reference to a separately-issued performance report does not eliminate the need to discuss performance in MD&A.
20. The performance reports required by the Results Act may be voluminous for some agencies. In such cases, it may not be desirable to include all this information in the GPFFR. It is necessary to include at least some information about performance with the financial statements, however, so that people who use the GPFFR can understand why the costs reported in the financial statements were incurred and the consequences of doing so.
21. In the same way, the GPFFR by itself may not provide a comprehensive report on systems, controls and legal compliance. There may be voluminous reports from management and auditors on these topics. It is necessary to include at least some information about these topics, however, so that users of the GPFFR can understand whether the resources on which it reports were properly safeguarded and used for the purposes intended, whether reliable reports can be prepared, and whether the other objectives of internal controls are being met. This information is important both to provide a basis for understanding the financial statements themselves and to address the objectives of federal financial reporting.
22. Combining information on these topics adds value by putting the information about performance, internal controls, and systems in the context of audited financial statements. For example, the quality of information on the cost of outputs and outcomes of programs is

---

<sup>8</sup>Note that the purpose of the pilot Accountability Reports is to eliminate the need for numerous separate reports and to include the information required by those reports in a single report. For example, the Integrity Act requires an assertion on controls by the agency head. Pilot agencies are including this assertion in the Accountability Report.

---

enhanced by linking these indicators to the audited Statement of Net Cost. This is true even though the Statement of Net Cost may be too highly aggregated to identify separately all the programs reported on for the Results Act. Similarly, the auditor's tests of transactions and controls in connection with the audit of the financial statements provide information about the condition of the systems and controls used to safeguard resources and to assure that they are used for the intended purposes, in conformance with law. (Paragraphs 15 and 40-49 say more about the discussion and analysis of systems, controls, and performance.)

---

### Authoritative Status of Accounting Concepts

23. This Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts describes ideas and goals to guide the Board in its work. Concepts are not authoritative in the sense that they do not constitute accounting standards or principles for federal reporting entities. In particular, they are not "prescribed guidelines" for required supplementary information as discussed in section 558 of the Codification of Statements on Auditing Standards published by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants.

---

### Topics For MD&A

24. This section provides specific suggestions for the content of MD&A. Like the other sections of this document, this material does not constitute accounting standards or principles for federal reporting entities. Except to the extent that OMB may issue supplementary mandatory guidance regarding the content of MD&A, the following items should be read as suggestions to be considered, not as prescriptive rules that must be followed.

---

### Mission and Organizational Structure

25. MD&A should contain a brief description of the mission(s) of the entity and describe its related organizational structure.

---

---

## Discussion and Analysis of the Financial Statements

26. Financial Results, Position and Condition<sup>9</sup>—MD&A should help those who read it to understand the entity’s financial results and financial position and the entity’s effect on the financial position and condition of the Government.<sup>10</sup> It should give readers the benefit of management’s understanding of the significance and potential effect from both a short- and a long-term perspective of:
- the variations discussed in paragraph 14 in terms of major changes in types or amounts of assets, liabilities, costs, revenues, obligations and outlays;
  - particular balances and amounts shown in the basic financial statements, including the notes, such as those dealing with funds from dedicated collections, if relevant to important financial management issues and concerns; and
  - the entity’s required supplementary stewardship information (because RSSI describes economic conditions that cannot be expressed in the basic financial statements).
27. Only those variations, balances and amounts, and stewardship matters of potential interest to readers who are not part of agency management should be discussed. Not all changes that are material to the GPFFR are sufficiently important to be included in MD&A. A line-by-line analysis of the financial statements is not generally appropriate. Instead, MD&A should summarize the most important items, explain the relevant causes and effects, and place them in context.
28. Budgetary Integrity—MD&A should concisely explain how budgetary resources have been obtained and used, instances in which their acquisition and use were not in accordance with legal authorization, the status of budgetary resources, and how information on the use of budgetary resources relates to information on the cost of program operations. MD&A should explain when major support for cost of a program or activity is provided outside the reporting entity’s budget and when the entity’s budget supports a program primarily reported by another entity. The discussion should describe major financing arrangements, guarantees, and lines of credit, including those not recognized in the basic financial statements.

---

<sup>9</sup>For many readers program performance information is more important than the financial statements. The order in which topics are discussed in this document does not imply that performance information is of secondary importance. See paragraphs 43 and following.

<sup>10</sup>Materiality of effects to be discussed should be evaluated in the context of the specific reporting entity, not the Government as a whole.

- 
29. MD&A should explain major changes during the period to the budget originally approved, major failures to comply with finance-related laws, and other matters management believes necessary. These could include:
- unfunded liabilities that may require appropriations;
  - assets that could be sold to augment future budgetary resources;
  - amounts of payments that have not been matched with obligations;
  - anticipated increases in the cost to complete long-term projects in progress that may require additional obligations or appropriations.
30. Use of Estimates—MD&A should concisely explain the use of estimates where that is important to understand issues discussed in MD&A, such as the major risks and uncertainties mentioned in paragraph 31 or the key forward-looking information discussed in paragraph 32. For example, the future expenses and the long term obligations<sup>11</sup> associated with major social insurance programs such as Social Security and Medicare should be discussed in MD&A of the financial report of the relevant reporting entities. These estimates are inherently imprecise and sensitive to several assumptions. Such factors would, therefore, be worthy of discussion in MD&A.
31. Current Demands, Risks, Uncertainties, Events, Conditions, and Trends—MD&A should describe important existing, currently-known demands, risks, uncertainties, events, conditions and trends—both favorable and unfavorable—that affect the amounts reported in the financial statements and supplementary information. The information called for by this paragraph and paragraph 32 is closely related. Preparers should combine the presentation of this information in whatever fashion is appropriate under the circumstances that apply to the reporting entity.
32. Future Effects of Current Demands, Risks, Uncertainties, Events, Conditions and Trends—The discussion of these current factors should go beyond a mere description of existing conditions, such as demographic characteristics, claims, deferred maintenance, commitments<sup>12</sup> undertaken, and major unfunded liabilities, to include a discussion of the possible future effect of those factors. (This discussion of possible future effect of existing, currently-known factors is required pursuant to the standards in *Standards for Management's Discussion and Analysis*.)
33. Future Effects of Anticipated Future Events, Conditions, and Trends—To the extent feasible and appropriate, the discussion should also encompass the possible future effects of

---

<sup>11</sup>The term “obligations” is used here in the customary sense, not as it is used in budgetary accounting.

<sup>12</sup>The term “commitments” is used here in the customary sense, not as it is used in budgetary accounting.

---

anticipated future events, conditions, and trends, although this additional information is not required by the standards for MD&A.<sup>13</sup> For example, MD&A might discuss the possible future effect of anticipated trends in the cost of inputs that may significantly affect future output costs. Other examples include the future effect of anticipated demographic trends, such as declining mortality rates, and the future effects of potential changes in behavior that may be caused by changes in Government programs. Such behavioral changes can greatly affect the future cost of some Governmental programs. For example, such effects can arise if subsidized insurance encourages the people or entities most at risk to participate in insurance programs (“adverse selection”) or encourages risky behavior (“moral hazard”).

34. An anticipated condition such as a prospective demographic trend or potential behavioral change may not, in itself, constitute a contingency or assumed risk that must be recognized, disclosed, or reported pursuant to SFFAS 5. Likewise, it may not be something that must be discussed in MD&A pursuant to the *Standards for Management’s Discussion and Analysis*. Even so, if there is a reasonable prospect of a major effect on the reporting entity due to the anticipated condition, then MD&A should include this information to the extent feasible.
35. Where appropriate, the description of possible future effects of both existing and anticipated factors should include quantitative forecasts\* or projections\*. Such forecasts or projections can show the implications of existing policies and conditions in light of anticipated or reasonably possible future conditions. For example, for MD&A of the Government-wide financial statements, long-term projections of the deficit or surplus may be important indicators of financial condition and sustainability. For insurance programs, this kind of projection—which actuaries sometimes call “dynamic analysis”—would consider possible interactions among current assets, reserves, policies in force, expected future business or populations covered by the insurance, and potential behavioral changes such as adverse selection and moral hazard, if appropriate. Some programs are inter-related among themselves and/or with conditions in the private sector. For example, flood insurance programs and disaster assistance programs may be related to such an extent that analysis of programs individually would not provide a good idea of their potential impact on the Government. To the extent feasible, projections should consider the potential implications of such relationships.
36. The future implications of current or anticipated factors often can better be expressed as a range of possible outcomes and associated probabilities than as a single point estimate. Sometimes the implications may best be discussed in nonfinancial as well as financial terms.

---

<sup>13</sup>Some projections that could involve consideration of anticipated factors would be presented as required supplementary stewardship information pursuant to the standards exposed for comment in FASAB’s exposure draft Accounting for Social Insurance, February, 1998.

---

Forward-looking information can be highly useful, but management should avoid turning this part of MD&A into mere “lobbying” for more budgetary authority.

37. **Understanding Financial Reporting**—MD&A should make federal financial statements understandable to a wide audience, not just to users who are specialized analysts or members of the entity’s management. There may be many potential sources of misunderstanding. Management should try to identify those sources of misunderstanding that may be important and deal with them in MD&A. Some of these are general and pervasive, such as those that may arise in the minds of new users of federal financial statements. New users may have been budget-oriented rather than accrual-accounting oriented, or may be accustomed to seeing financial statements prepared on the basis of private sector accounting standards. A general discussion and reference to the Statement of Financing and the basis of accounting footnote may be sufficient for such users, although more specific treatment may be appropriate where the resulting differences in the reported amounts may be important to the understanding of users.
38. Emphasis that may be given in the financial statements to the costs of suborganizations and programs may require cautionary discussion of the relevance and utility of cost information. When MD&A itself discusses the cost of program outcomes, the problems of associating costs with outcomes may need to be discussed. In addition, the possible imprecision of cost information should be mentioned when it could be relevant to users’ understanding. Similarly, any account-level discussion in MD&A of variations, balances, and amounts in the basic and stewardship information made in response to paragraphs 26 and 27 may require mention of the imprecision of amounts cited.
39. Exceptions and disclaimers in the auditor’s report should be mentioned in MD&A, and management should respect the auditor’s professional judgment if management expresses disagreement with auditor’s findings. (This does not mean that management must refrain from stating views that differ from the auditor’s; e.g., different views as to whether a weakness in control is material.) There may be other sources of misunderstanding. Management should be sensitive to them and guide the user to a better understanding when the problem could significantly affect the conclusions and judgments of substantial numbers of users.

---

## Discussion and Analysis of Systems, Controls and Legal Compliance

40. The schematic diagram of a sample GPFRR on page 7 includes a discrete section that reports on the status of the entity’s management systems and internal controls that support (1) preparation of financial statements and performance information in accordance with Federal Accounting Standards and management’s criteria, respectively, and (2) the entity’s

---

compliance with applicable laws.<sup>14</sup> That section also describes material problems revealed by audits or otherwise known to management, and the corrective actions taken or planned regarding material problems.

41. Where relevant, management should discuss the results of audits of non-Federal entities such as those pursuant to the Single Audit Act as amended and OMB Circular A-133. MD&A should also discuss actions taken, in progress, or planned to address systemic problems in program design that contributed to the audit findings. Where relevant, management should describe the methods used to limit, detect, and recover improper payments; to assure that grantees and other nonfederal recipients of Federal funds use the funds as intended; and to assure that Federal and nonfederal entities comply with finance-related laws and regulations. MD&A should include a concise description of any major problems in these areas and of the corrective action taken or planned.

---

## Discussion and Analysis of Performance

42. Performance Measurement—The objectives and needs of the Federal Government are markedly different from the objectives and needs of non-governmental organizations. This difference extends to the needs of those who use financial statements of governmental organizations. Their needs are different in many ways from the needs of investors, which the SEC's requirements address. In particular, reporting on the performance of governmental programs, organizations, and activities requires information that goes beyond the change in net assets and, indeed, beyond financial information.

---

<sup>14</sup>These responsibilities are defined in numerous laws and administrative requirements, including the Federal Financial Management Improvement Act, OMB Circulars A-123 and A-127, and OMB Bulletin 98-08. A law of special importance in this connections is the Federal Managers' Financial Integrity Act of 1982 (FMFIA or the Integrity Act). The Integrity Act requires, in part, that "internal accounting and administrative controls of each executive agency shall be established.. and shall provide reasonable assurance that --

- (i) obligations and costs are in compliance with applicable law;
- (ii) funds, property, and other assets are safeguarded against waste, loss, unauthorized use, or misappropriation; and
- (iii) revenues and expenditures applicable to agency operations are properly recorded and accounted for to permit the preparation of accounts and reliable financial and statistical reports and to maintain accountability over the assets.

- 
43. The actual outcomes, accomplishments, or degree to which predetermined objectives are met provide indicators or measures of some aspects of effectiveness.<sup>15</sup> MD&A should objectively discuss the entity's program results and indicate the extent to which its programs are achieving their intended objectives.<sup>16</sup> Efficiency and effectiveness are important elements of performance measurement, and measuring cost is an integral part of assessing the efficiency and effectiveness of programs. Relating outputs (the quantity of services provided) to inputs (the cost incurred to provide the services) provides an indicator or measure of one aspect of efficiency. Information about effectiveness is often combined with cost information to help assess "cost effectiveness."
44. The entity's financial performance should be summarized to provide significant indicators of its financial operations for the reporting period. Indicators of financial performance are presented in notes and supplementary information as well as on the face of the principal financial statements, e.g., information about management of loans and accounts receivable. Financial performance is only one aspect of performance for governmental entities. Financial performance should be discussed to the extent relevant for the entity, in a way that appropriately balances the discussion of financial and nonfinancial performance relevant to the program or other reporting entity.
45. The discussion of performance should relate to major goals and objectives from the agency's strategic plan and to the indicators reported pursuant to the Results Act. It should explain what key performance indicators say about program performance. The summary discussion of performance in MD&A should:
- discuss the strategies and resources the agency uses to achieve its performance goals;
  - provide a clear picture of actual and planned performance across the agency; and
  - explain the procedures that management has designed and followed to provide reasonable assurance that the reported performance information is relevant and reliable.
46. The discussion of performance should:

---

<sup>15</sup>SFFAC 1, paragraph 206 notes that, to the extent feasible and practical, effectiveness evaluation should focus on program results or effects in the sense of "impacts," i.e., the difference between what actually occurred and what would have occurred in the absence of the program. Assessing impacts of Governmental action in this sense typically requires program evaluations or other techniques that transcend annual performance reporting, although these techniques often will avail of information in the annual performance reports. Valid and reliable evaluations of program impacts are not feasible for some programs. When they are conducted, they often require several years of data, are expensive, and typically are not performed on an annual basis for a given program.

<sup>16</sup>Paragraphs 106-111 and Appendix 1-F of Statements of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts 2, *Entity and Display*, discuss and illustrate reporting on performance in the GPFRR.

- include both positive and negative results;
  - present historical and future trends, if relevant (see paragraphs 31-36 regarding projections of the financial effects of known and anticipated demands, commitments, events, risks, uncertainties or trends for which a material financial effect is reasonably possible);
  - be illustrated with charts and graphs, whenever helpful, for easy identification of trends;
  - explain the significance of the trends;
  - provide comparison of actual results to goals or benchmarks;
  - explain variations from goals and plans; and
  - provide other explanatory information that management believes readers will need to understand the significance of the indicators, the results, and any variations from goals or plans.
47. To further enhance the usefulness of the information, agencies should include an explanation of what needs to be done and what they plan to do to improve program performance.
48. Understanding Performance Reporting—Important limitations and difficulties associated with performance measurement and reporting should be noted to the extent relevant to the vital performance indicators discussed in MD&A. The relevant limitations will vary from program to program, but some common factors that may need to be discussed include the following:
- performance usually cannot be fully described by a single indicator;
  - indicators of performance do not, by themselves, say why performance is at the level reported; and
  - focusing exclusively on quantifiable indicators can sometimes have unintended consequences.
49. For these and other reasons, performance indicators generally need to be accompanied by suitable explanatory information. Explanatory information helps report users understand reported indicators, assess the reporting entity's performance, and evaluate the significance of underlying factors that may have affected the reported performance. Explanatory information may include, for example, information about factors substantially outside the entity's control, as well as information about factors over which the entity has significant control.

***This Statement of Recommended Concepts was adopted unanimously by the eight members of the Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board serving on the Board in April 1999.***

---



---

## Appendix A: Basis For Conclusions

---

### Background and Project History

50. The Board identified MD&A as a topic for its agenda shortly after the Board’s inception. The Board deferred work on this topic, however, until it completed recommendations for an initial set of basic accounting standards. FASAB published an initial exposure draft on MD&A in January, 1997. The Board received comment letters on the initial exposure draft from the following sources:

|   | Federal<br>(internal) | Nonfederal<br>(external) | Total     |
|---|-----------------------|--------------------------|-----------|
| Users, Academics and Others <sup>17</sup> |                       | 4                        | 4         |
| Auditors                                  | 7                     | 3                        | 10        |
| Preparers and Financial Managers          | 16                    |                          | 16        |
| <b>Total</b>                              | <b>23</b>             | <b>7</b>                 | <b>30</b> |

51. The basic rationale for MD&A has not changed since the initial exposure draft. As a result of its deliberations after receiving comments on the 1997 exposure draft, however, the Board made certain changes. The more significant changes are discussed below.

---

### Concepts and Standards

52. The initial exposure draft was presented as a statement of recommended concepts. The Board proposed that it would deal with MD&A conceptually, with the understanding that OMB would provide authoritative guidance on MD&A to implement the concepts. This approach would have been similar to the one used to deal with the topics of entity and display. The Board dealt with those topics conceptually in SFFAC 2. OMB then provided authoritative guidance in its Bulletin on Form and Content. The 1997 exposure draft asked respondents whether all or part of its provisions should be issued as recommended standards rather than recommended concepts. Responses were mixed; most of those who commented on this question favored concepts, but a significant number expressed the view that standards would be appropriate.

---

<sup>17</sup>This category include representational organizations, retired federal employees, federal employees responding as individuals, and federal contractors, as well as academics and other GPFFR users.

53. The Board concluded that, given the importance of MD&A as an integral part of the GPFFR, it would be appropriate to recommend standards for MD&A. At the same time, however, the Board concluded that for now this information should be treated as required supplementary information. The Board also agreed that no detailed requirements or guidelines for MD&A should be incorporated in federal accounting standards at this time beyond those proposed in the subsequent exposure draft (discussed below) titled *Standards for Management's Discussion and Analysis*. In other words, the Board agreed, a discussion and analysis that addresses the topics listed in the proposed standards should be an essential part of a complete GPFFR. At the same time, management should have great discretion about what to say regarding those topics, subject only to the criteria proposed in the exposure draft *Standards for Management's Discussion and Analysis* and the pervasive requirement that MD&A not be misleading. Because of this change, the Board decided to expose separately for further comment the proposed new standards and concepts. The exposure drafts were issued in October 1998; responses were requested by January 1999.

### Responses to Second Exposure Draft

54. The Board received comment letters on the second exposure draft from the following sources:

|                                       | Federal<br>(internal) | Nonfederal<br>(external) | Total     |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|-----------|
| Citizens, Users, Academics and Others |                       | 3                        | 3         |
| Auditors <sup>18</sup>                | 3                     | 3                        | 6         |
| Preparers and Financial Managers      | 11                    |                          | 11        |
| <b>Total</b>                          | <b>14</b>             | <b>6</b>                 | <b>20</b> |

55. Most comments were generally favorable, but comments were mixed regarding some points. A few auditors and preparers expressed some concern about requiring forward-looking information as RSI. Others expressed support for doing so. After considering these responses, the Board agreed to defer the recommended implementation date of the standard by one year and to make minor editorial changes to the standards and concepts that were exposed for comment.

<sup>18</sup>Includes the AICPA's Federal Accounting and Auditing Subcommittee and the Comptroller General's Advisory Council on Government Audit Standards.

---

---

## Incorporation of Guidance in OMB Bulletin 97-01

56. This document, like both exposure drafts, integrates some of the guidance in OMB Bulletin 97-01 for preparing the “Overview” of the financial report with some of the guidance proposed in FASAB’s initial exposure draft for MD&A. Some portions of the guidance regarding performance measurement in 97-01’s discussion of the “Overview” have been omitted. As an interim step prior to implementation of the Results Act, OMB and many agencies used the Overview as a major vehicle for reporting on performance, not just as a summary and analysis. With the full implementation of the Results Act in FY 1999, however, it will be appropriate to implement the financial reporting model contemplated in SFFAC 2. This contemplates a discrete section of the GPFFR focused on performance. Alternatively, performance information may be incorporated in the GPFFR by reference to another report or reports.

---

## Management’s Assertions

57. Senior management of the reporting unit is responsible for the content of the GPFFR, including MD&A. Consistent with that, the initial exposure draft included the following paragraph:
- MD&A should include a discrete section with management’s explicit assertions that it is responsible for maintaining internal accounting and administrative controls that are adequate to ensure that
- transactions are executed in accordance with budgetary and financial laws and other requirements, consistent with the purposes authorized, and are recorded in accordance with Federal accounting standards;
  - assets are properly safeguarded to deter fraud, waste, and abuse; and
  - performance measurement information is adequately supported. [footnote omitted]
58. This paragraph, which was based on the language of objective four in SFFAC 1, was modified after the first exposure. The Board concluded that such assertions should be presented in a separate section of the GPFFR, not in MD&A. Alternatively, management’s assertions about internal control and related information about systems, controls, and compliance may be incorporated in the GPFFR by reference to another report or reports. (As noted previously, pilot agencies are including these assertions in their accountability reports.) FASAB expects to consider whether a new statement of standards is needed to assure that Federal financial reports adequately address objective four of Federal financial reporting, “Systems and Controls.” As noted in paragraph 41, MD&A should include a description of any major

---

deficiencies in the management systems and internal controls designed to provide reasonable assurance that management responsibilities are satisfactorily carried out. It also should describe the corrective action planned.

---

## Accountability Reports

59. The Board notes that the concept and practice of the “Accountability Report” continue to evolve through the pilot project voluntarily undertaken by several agencies. The Board supports this evolution and encourages agencies to participate in the pilot project. The concepts and standards FASAB recommends are intended to be applicable to the GPFFR of Federal entities, whether those reports are prepared pursuant to the Chief Financial Officers Act, the Government Management Reform Act, or some future law that might establish a statutory basis for Accountability Reports. In the event of such future legislation, OMB will need to resolve any questions about how to apply existing Federal accounting standards in the context of new legislative requirements.

---

## Incorporation by Reference

60. Some respondents were disturbed by the notion of providing program performance information through reference. Some were concerned that, if readers are merely directed to other reports for this information, the GPFFR will become irrelevant. They believe that the GPFFR should contain information about program performance, systems, and controls, not only in MD&A but also in discrete sections, such as the Statement of Program Performance discussed and illustrated in SFFAC 2, paragraphs 106-111 and Appendix 1-F.
61. The Board agrees that, as is stated in paragraph 20, “it is necessary to include at least some information about performance with the financial statements . . . so that people who use the GPFFR can understand why the costs reported in the financial statements were incurred and the consequences of doing so.”
62. The Board acknowledges that SFFAC 2 calls for and illustrates a Statement of Program Performance Measures. (Footnote 13 in SFFAC 2 explains that this statement is not “basic” information as that term is used in audit standards: “The Statement of program performance measures is not a basic financial statement. Nevertheless, it is an important component of the financial reports.”) The Board continues to believe that performance information is a vital, integral part of general purpose financial reporting. It should be noted, however, that SFFAC 1 and SFFAC 2 were issued before the performance planning and reporting requirements of GPRA became effective. The Results Act creates an elaborate new planning and reporting environment that is still evolving. Some details of the reporting model that were envisioned conceptually in SFFAC 2 may accordingly need to be revised slightly.

- 
63. This statement of concepts is intended to be consistent with the previously stated goals and concepts of the Board, while recognizing that some details of how best to achieve those goals in the new context still need to be defined. OMB will play a key role in this process; FASAB may also provide further guidance in future projects. FASAB agrees that the GPFFR should not address performance, systems, and controls only by means of reference to other reports. The standards for MD&A require that MD&A do more than refer to other documents.
  64. Others expressed concern that, if MD&A is to be regarded as RSI, audit problems might arise from “incorporation by reference” in MD&A of information drawn from other sources that might not be subject to audit or review as basic or required supplementary information, and for which authoritative guidance had not been provided by a standard setter. The Board noted that most of those who commented, including most auditors, did not appear to be greatly concerned about this potential problem. The Board concluded, therefore, that any such problems were not likely to be insurmountable. The Board did, however, agree to defer by one year the implementation date of the standard to allow OMB and GAO time to resolve any audit issues that may arise.

---

---

**Appendix B: Glossary**

See Consolidated Glossary in “Appendix E: Consolidated Glossary.”

---

# Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Standards 4: Managerial Cost Accounting Standards and Concepts

---

---

## Status

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>Issued</b>                                 | July 31, 1995   |
| <b>Effective Date</b>                         | For fiscal years beginning after September 30, 1996. Subsequently modified to be for years beginning after September 30, 1997.  |
| <b>Interpretations and Technical Releases</b> | Interpretation 2, <i>Accounting for Treasury Judgment Fund Transactions</i><br>TR 1, <i>Audit Legal Letter Guidance</i><br>Interpretation 6, <i>Accounting for Imputed Intra-departmental Costs: An Interpretation of SFFAS No. 4.</i>                                      |
| <b>Affects</b>                                | None.   |
| <b>Affected by</b>                            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• SFFAS 9, <i>Deferral of Implementation Date of SFFAS No. 4</i>, defers the implementation date of SFFAS 4.</li><li>• SFFAS 30, <i>Inter-Entity Cost Implementation</i>, rescinds par. 110 and amends par. 111 of SFFAS 4.</li></ul> |

---

---

## Summary

The managerial cost accounting concepts and standards contained in this statement are aimed at providing reliable and timely information on the full cost of federal programs, their activities, and outputs. The concepts of managerial cost accounting contained in this statement describe the relationship among cost accounting, financial reporting, and budgeting. The five standards set forth the fundamental elements of managerial cost accounting.

---

## Managerial Cost Accounting Concepts

Managerial cost accounting should be a fundamental part of the financial management system and, to the extent practicable, should be integrated with other parts of the system. Managerial costing should use a basis of accounting, recognition, and measurement appropriate for the intended purpose. Cost information developed for different purposes should be drawn from a common data source, and output reports should be reconcilable to each other.

---

## Managerial Cost Accounting Standards

Requirement for cost accounting - Each reporting entity should accumulate and report the costs of its activities on a regular basis for management information purposes. Costs may be accumulated either through the use of cost accounting systems or through the use of cost finding techniques.

---

Responsibility segments - Management of each reporting entity should define and establish responsibility segments. Managerial cost accounting should be performed to measure and report the costs of each segment's outputs. Special cost studies, if necessary, should be performed to determine the costs of outputs.

Full cost - Reporting entities should report the full costs of outputs in general purpose financial reports. The full cost of an output produced by a responsibility segment is the sum of (1) the costs of resources consumed by the segment that directly or indirectly contribute to the output, and (2) the costs of identifiable supporting services provided by other responsibility segments within the reporting entity, and by other reporting entities.

Inter-entity costs - Each entity's full cost should incorporate the full cost of goods and services that it receives from other entities. The entity providing the goods or services has the responsibility to provide the receiving entity with information on the full cost of such goods or services either through billing or other advice.

Recognition of inter-entity costs that are not fully reimbursed is limited to material items that (1) are significant to the receiving entity, (2) form an integral or necessary part of the receiving entity's output, and (3) can be identified or matched to the receiving entity with reasonable precision. Broad and general support services provided by an entity to all or most other entities generally should not be recognized unless such services form a vital and integral part of the operations or output of the receiving entity.

Costing methodology - Costs of resources consumed by responsibility segments should be accumulated by type of resource. Outputs produced by responsibility segments should be accumulated and, if practicable, measured in units. The full costs of resources that directly or indirectly contribute to the production of outputs should be assigned to outputs through costing methodologies or cost finding techniques that are most appropriate to the segment's operating environment and should be followed consistently.

The cost assignments should be performed using the following methods listed in the order of preference: (a) directly tracing costs wherever feasible and economically practicable, (b) assigning costs on a cause-and-effect basis, or (c) allocating costs on a reasonable and consistent basis.

---



---

## Table of Contents

|   | <b>Page</b> |
|---|-------------|
| <b>Summary</b>  | 1           |
| <b>Executive Summary</b>  | 4           |
| <b>Introduction</b>   | 7           |
| Background  | 7           |
| Users of Federal Government Cost Information                          | 8           |
| Objectives  | 9           |
| Scope   | 9           |
| Terminology   | 10          |
| <b>Purposes of Using Cost Information</b>                             | 11          |
| Budgeting and Cost Control  | 11          |
| Performance Measurement   | 12          |
| Determining Reimbursements and Setting Fees and Prices                | 12          |
| Program Evaluations   | 13          |
| Economic Choice Decisions   | 13          |
| <b>Managerial Cost Accounting Concepts</b>                            | 13          |
| <b>Managerial Cost Accounting Standards</b>                           | 20          |
| Requirement for Cost Accounting                                       | 20          |
| Responsibility Segments   | 23          |
| Full Cost   | 26          |
| Inter-Entity Costs  | 31          |
| Costing Methodology   | 35          |
| <b>Appendix A: Basis For Conclusions</b>                              | 46          |
| <b>Appendix B: Glossary [See Consolidated Glossary in Appendix E]</b> | 70          |

---

---

## Executive Summary

1. The managerial cost accounting concepts and standards contained in this statement are aimed at providing reliable and timely information on the full cost of federal programs, their activities, and outputs. The cost information can be used by the Congress and federal executives in making decisions about allocating federal resources, authorizing and modifying programs, and evaluating program performance. The cost information can also be used by program managers in making managerial decisions to improve operating economy and efficiency.
2. The concepts of managerial cost accounting contained in this statement describe the relationship among cost accounting, financial reporting, and budgeting. The five standards set forth the fundamental elements of managerial cost accounting: (1) accumulating and reporting costs of activities on a regular basis for management information purposes, (2) establishing responsibility segments to match costs with outputs, (3) determining full costs of government goods and services, (4) recognizing the costs of goods and services provided among federal entities, and (5) using appropriate costing methodologies to accumulate and assign costs to outputs.
3. These standards are based on sound cost accounting concepts and are broad enough to allow maximum flexibility for agency managers to develop costing methods that are best suited to their operational environment. Also, the managerial cost accounting standards and practices will evolve and improve as agencies gain experience in using them. The following is a summary of the concepts and standards contained in this statement.

---

## Managerial Cost Accounting Concepts

4. Managerial cost accounting should be a fundamental part of the financial management system and, to the extent practicable, should be integrated with other parts of the system. Managerial costing should use a basis of accounting, recognition, and measurement appropriate for the intended purpose. Cost information developed for different purposes should be drawn from a common data source, and output reports should be reconcilable to each other.

---

---

## Managerial Cost Accounting Standards

### Requirement for cost accounting

5. Each reporting entity should accumulate and report the costs of its activities on a regular basis for management information purposes. Costs may be accumulated either through the use of cost accounting systems or through the use of cost finding techniques.

### Responsibility segments

6. Management of each reporting entity should define and establish responsibility segments. Managerial cost accounting should be performed to measure and report the costs of each segment's outputs. Special cost studies, if necessary, should be performed to determine the costs of outputs.

### Full cost

7. Reporting entities should report the full costs of outputs in general purpose financial reports. The full cost of an output produced by a responsibility segment is the sum of (1) the costs of resources consumed by the segment that directly or indirectly contribute to the output, and (2) the costs of identifiable supporting services provided by other responsibility segments within the reporting entity, and by other reporting entities.

### Inter-entity costs

8. Each entity's full cost should incorporate the full cost of goods and services that it receives from other entities. The entity providing the goods or services has the responsibility to provide the receiving entity with information on the full cost of such goods or services either through billing or other advice.
9. Recognition of inter-entity costs that are not fully reimbursed is limited to material items that (1) are significant to the receiving entity, (2) form an integral or necessary part of the receiving entity's output, and (3) can be identified or matched to the receiving entity with reasonable precision. Broad and general support services provided by an entity to all or most other entities generally should not be recognized unless such services form a vital and integral part of the operations or output of the receiving entity.

---

Costing methodology

10. Costs of resources consumed by responsibility segments should be accumulated by type of resource. Outputs produced by responsibility segments should be accumulated and, if practicable, measured in units. The full costs of resources that directly or indirectly contribute to the production of outputs should be assigned to outputs through costing methodologies or cost finding techniques that are most appropriate to the segment's operating environment and should be followed consistently.
11. The cost assignments should be performed using the following methods listed in the order of preference: (a) directly tracing costs wherever feasible and economically practicable. (b) assigning costs on a cause-and-effect basis, or (c) allocating costs on a reasonable and consistent basis.
12. These accounting standards need not be applied to items that are qualitatively and quantitatively immaterial. The Board recommends that the managerial accounting standards of this Statement become effective for fiscal periods beginning after September 30, 1996. Earlier implementation is encouraged.

---

---

## Introduction

---

### Background

13. Reliable information on the costs of federal programs and activities is crucial for effective management of government operations. In Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts (SFFAC) No. 1, Objectives of Federal Financial Reporting, issued in 1993, it is stated that the objectives of federal financial reporting are to provide useful information to assist internal and external users in assessing the budget integrity, operating performance, stewardship, and systems and control of the federal government.<sup>1</sup>
14. Managerial cost accounting is especially important for fulfilling the objective of assessing operating performance. In relation to that objective, it is stated in SFFAC No. 1 that federal financial reporting should provide information that helps users to determine:
- Costs of specific programs and activities and the composition of, and changes in, those costs;
  - Efforts and accomplishments associated with federal programs and their changes over time and in relation to costs; and
  - Efficiency and effectiveness of the government's management of its assets and liabilities.<sup>2</sup>
15. It is further stated in SFFAC No. 1 that "The topics of costs and performance measurement are related because it is by associating cost with activities or cost objectives that accounting can make much of its contribution to reporting on performance."<sup>3</sup> "Cost" is the monetary value of resources used or sacrificed or liabilities incurred to achieve an objective, such as to acquire or produce a good or to perform an activity or service. Costs incurred may benefit current and future periods. In financial accounting and reporting, the costs that apply to an entity's operations for the current accounting period are recognized as expenses of that period.

---

<sup>1</sup>Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts No. 1, *Objectives of Federal Financial Reporting* (September 2, 1993), pars. 110 and 111.

<sup>2</sup>Ibid., pars. 126-130.

<sup>3</sup>Ibid., par. 192.

- 
16. The Chief Financial Officers Act of 1990 includes among the functions of chief financial officers “the development and reporting of cost information” and “the systematic measurement of performance.”<sup>4</sup> In July 1993, Congress passed the Government Performance and Results Act (GPRA) which mandates performance measurement by federal agencies.<sup>5</sup> In September 1993, in his report to the President on the National Performance Review (NPR), Vice President Al Gore recommended an action which required the Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board to issue a set of cost accounting standards for all federal activities.<sup>6</sup> Those standards will provide a method for identifying the unit cost of all government activities.
  17. In early 1994, the Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board (the Board) convened an advisory group to help develop standards for managerial cost accounting in the federal government. The group included members from government, business, and academe. Their views and proposals have been considered by the Board, and their work contributed greatly in developing this document.

---

## Users Of Federal Cost Information

18. The cost of government is a concern to the public as well as to the federal government itself. Most government service efforts and accomplishments cannot be measured in financial terms alone. Unlike private business, there is no “bottom line” or profit index to help measure public sector performance. However, government service efforts and accomplishments can be evaluated using both financial and non-financial measures, and “cost” is an important financial measure for government programs. Internal and external federal information users identified below will find these standards helpful in assessing operating performance, stewardship, systems, and control of the federal government.
19. *Government managers* are the primary users of cost information. They are responsible for carrying out program objectives with resources entrusted to them. Reliable and timely cost information helps them ensure that resources are spent to achieve expected results and outputs, and alerts them to waste and inefficiency.
20. *Congress and federal executives*, including the President, make policy decisions on program priorities and allocate resources among programs. These officials need cost information to

---

<sup>4</sup>104 Stat. 2938 (See particularly 31 U.S.C. sec 902).

<sup>5</sup>107 Stat. 285 (See particularly, 31 U.S.C. sections 1101, 1105, 1115, 1116-1119, 9703, 9704).

<sup>6</sup>Vice President Al Gore, Creating A Government That Works Better & Costs Less, Accompanying Report of the National Performance Review (September 1993), p. 59.

---

compare alternative courses of action and to make program authorization decisions by assessing costs and benefits. They also need cost information to evaluate program performance.

21. *Citizens*, including news media and interest groups, are concerned with the costs and results of federal programs that affect their interests. They need program cost information to judge whether resources are allocated to programs rationally and if the programs operate efficiently and effectively.

---

## Objectives

22. The managerial cost accounting concepts and standards presented here are intended for all the user groups identified above. These standards are aimed at achieving three general objectives:
- Provide program managers<sup>7</sup> with relevant and reliable information relating costs to outputs and activities. Based on this information, program managers can respond to inquiries about the costs of the activities they manage. The cost information will assist them in improving operational economy and efficiency;
  - Provide relevant and reliable cost information to assist the Congress and executives in making decisions about allocating federal resources, authorizing and modifying programs, and evaluating program performance; and
  - Ensure consistency between costs reported in general purpose financial reports and costs reported to program managers. This includes standardizing terminology for managerial cost accounting to improve communication among federal organizations and users of cost information.

---

## Scope Of Standards

23. This statement contains managerial cost concepts and five standards for the federal government. The five standards address the following topics:
- (1) Requirement for cost accounting,
  - (2) Responsibility segments,
  - (3) Full cost,

---

<sup>7</sup>Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts No. 1, Objectives of Financial Reporting, defined “Program managers” as individuals who manage federal programs, and stated that “Their concerns include operating plans, program operations, and budget execution.” SFFAC No. 1, par. 85.

- 
- (4) Inter-entity costs, and
  - (5) Costing methodology.

The essence of each standard is briefly stated in a box followed by detailed explanations. **However, both the words in the boxes and the entire text of explanations constitute the requirements of the standards.**

- 24. These standards are based on sound cost accounting concepts and allow sufficient flexibility for agencies to develop managerial cost accounting practices that are suited to their specific operating environments. Also, it is expected that cost accounting standards and practices will evolve and improve as agencies gain experience in using them.
- 25. Other Statements of Federal Financial Accounting Standards (SFFAS) address recognition and measurement of assets and liabilities. For additional guidance, readers should consult: SFFAS No. 1, *Accounting for Selected Assets and Liabilities*; SFFAS No. 2, *Accounting for Direct Loans and Loan Guarantees*; and SFFAS No. 3, *Accounting for Inventory and Related Property*. The Board is working on and will soon complete other recognition and measurement projects related to revenues, liabilities, property, plant, and equipment, and other elements of financial statements.<sup>8</sup>

---

## Terminology

- 26. Managerial cost accounting information, to be useful, must rely on consistent and uniform terminology for concepts, practices, and techniques. Consistent and uniform use of terminology can help avoid confusion and mis-communication among organizations and individuals.
- 27. As a start toward developing consistent managerial cost accounting terminology within the federal government, this statement includes a glossary of basic cost accounting terms.

---

## Materiality

- 28. Except as otherwise noted, the accounting and reporting provisions of these accounting standards need not be applied to items that are qualitatively or quantitatively immaterial.

---

<sup>8</sup>See FASAB Exposure Drafts, *Accounting for Liabilities of the Federal Government* (November 7, 1994); *Accounting for Property, Plant, and Equipment* (February 28, 1995); and *Revenue and Other Financing Sources* (Pending).

- 
29. The determination of whether an item is material depends on the degree to which omitting information about the item makes it probable that the judgment of a reasonable person relying on the information would have been changed or influenced by the omission.

---

## Effective Date

30. The managerial cost accounting standards prescribed in SFFAS No. 4 shall be effective for fiscal periods beginning after September 30, 1997. Earlier implementation is encouraged.

---

## Purposes Of Using Cost Information

31. There are many different purposes for which cost information may be used by the federal government. The focus of this statement is on cost information needed to improve federal financial management and managerial decision making.
32. In managing federal government programs, cost information is essential in the following five areas: (1) budgeting and cost control, (2) performance measurement, (3) determining reimbursements and setting fees and prices, (4) program evaluations, and (5) making economic choice decisions. Each of these uses is discussed below.

---

## Budgeting And Cost Control

33. Information on the costs of program activities can be used as a basis to estimate future costs in preparing and reviewing budgets. Once budgets are approved and executed, cost information serves as a feedback to budgets. Using cost information, federal managers can control and reduce costs, and find and avoid waste. For example, with appropriate cost information, federal managers can:
- Compare costs with known or assumed benefits of activities, identify value-added and non-value-added activities, and make decisions to reduce resources devoted to activities that are not cost-effective;
  - Compare and determine reasons for variances between actual and budgeted costs of an activity or a product;
  - Compare cost changes over time and identify their causes;
  - Identify and reduce excess capacity costs; and
  - Compare costs of similar activities and find causes for cost differences, if any.

---

---

## Performance Measurement

34. Measuring performance is a means of improving program efficiency, effectiveness, and program results. One of the stated purposes of the GPRA of 1993 is to “. . .improve the confidence of the American people in the capability of the federal government, by systematically holding federal agencies accountable for achieving program results.”
35. Measuring costs is an integral part of measuring performance in terms of efficiency and cost-effectiveness. Efficiency is measured by relating outputs to inputs. It is often expressed by the cost per unit of output. While effectiveness in itself is measured by the outcome or the degree to which a predetermined objective is met, it is commonly combined with cost information to show “cost-effectiveness.” Thus, the service efforts and accomplishments of a government entity can be evaluated with the following measures:
- (1) Measures of service efforts which include the costs of resources used to provide the services and non-financial measures;
  - (2) Measures of accomplishments which are outputs (the quantity of services provided) and outcomes (the results of those services); and
  - (3) Measures that relate efforts to accomplishments, Such as cost per unit of output or cost-effectiveness.
36. Thus, as stated previously, performance measurement requires both financial and non-financial measures. Cost is a necessary element for performance measurement, but is not the only element.

---

## Determining Reimbursements And Setting Fees And Prices

37. Cost information is an important basis in setting fees and reimbursements. Pricing and costing, however, are two different concepts. Setting prices is a policy matter, sometimes governed by statutory provisions and regulations, and other times by managerial or public policies. Thus, the price of a good or service does not necessarily equal the cost of the good or the service determined under a particular set of principles. Nevertheless, cost is an important consideration in setting government prices. With certain exceptions, OMB requires:<sup>9</sup>

---

<sup>9</sup>OMB Circular A-25, User Charges (Revised July 8, 1993).

- 
- With respect to goods and services that the government provides in its sovereign capacity to a particular group of individuals as a special benefit, user charges should be sufficient to recover the full cost of those goods and services; and
  - With respect to goods and services that the government provides under business-like conditions, user charges for those goods and services need not be limited to the recovery of full cost and may yield a net revenue.
38. Also, cost information is important in calculating reimbursements for products and services provided by one government agency to another. Even if fees or reimbursements do not recover the full costs due to policy or economic constraints, management needs to be aware of the difference between cost and price. With this information, program managers can properly inform the public, the Congress, and federal executives about the costs of providing the goods or services.

---

## Program Evaluations

39. Costs of federal resources required by programs are an important factor in making policy decisions related to program authorization, modification, and discontinuation. These decisions are usually subject to policy constraints, and often require the consideration of social and economic costs and benefits affecting different sectors of the economy and society. Nevertheless, the costs of federal resources required are an important factor. Information on program costs can be used as a basis for cost-benefit considerations.

---

## Economic Choice Decisions

40. Often, agencies and programs face decisions involving choices among alternative actions, such as whether to do a project in-house or contract it out; to accept or reject a proposal; or to continue or drop a product or service. Making these decisions requires cost comparisons among available alternatives.

---

## Managerial Cost Accounting Concepts

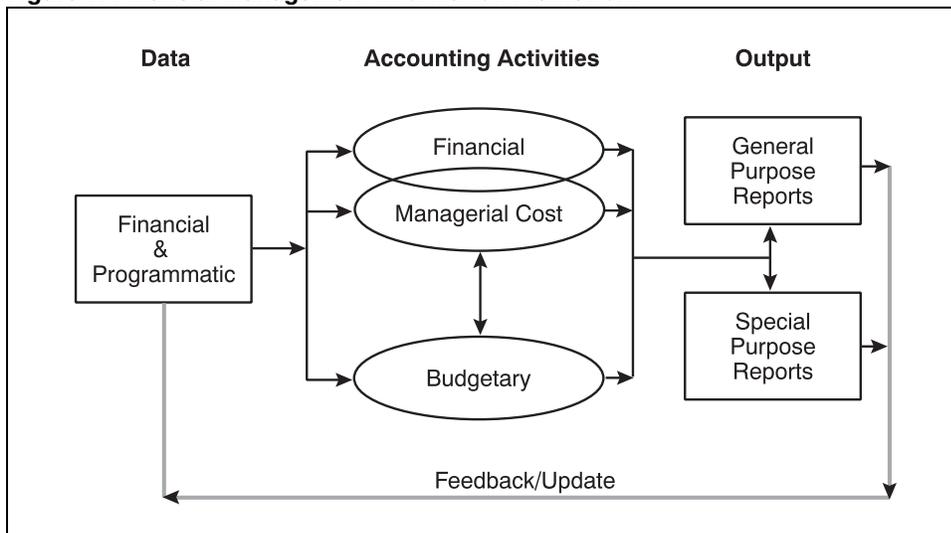
**Managerial cost accounting should be a fundamental part of the financial management system and, to the extent practicable, should be integrated with other parts of the system. Managerial costing should use a basis of accounting, recognition, and measurement appropriate for the intended purpose. Cost information developed for different purposes should be drawn from a common data source, and output reports should be reconcilable to each other.**

41. Managerial cost accounting should be an essential element of proper financial planning, control, and evaluation for any organization or activity that uses resources having monetary value. Managerial cost accounting is a basic part of the financial management system in that it supports and provides data to the budgetary and financial accounting functions and, by itself, provides useful information for both internal and external users.

### Role Of Managerial Cost Accounting In Financial Management

42. Managerial cost accounting is the process of accumulating, measuring, analyzing, interpreting, and reporting cost information useful to both internal and external groups concerned with the way in which the organization uses, accounts for, safeguards, and controls its resources to meet its objectives. Managerial cost accounting, therefore, is the servant of both budgetary and financial accounting and reporting because it assists those systems in providing information. Also, it provides useful information directly to management. These relationships are shown in Figure 1.

**Figure 1: Financial Management Information Framework**



### Common Data Source

43. The information flow within a financial management system begins with a basic information pool or common data source. This data source consists of all financial and programmatic information used by the budgetary, cost, and financial accounting processes. It includes all

---

financial and much non-financial data, such as environmental data, that are necessary for budgeting and financial reporting.<sup>10</sup> The common data source also includes evaluation and decision information developed as a result of prior reporting and feedback. Other types of data may be included based upon perceived needs and purposes related to the ultimate users of the information.

44. The common data source may include many different kinds of data. It is far more than the information about financial transactions found in the standard general ledger, although that is a significant part of the data source. Few organizations or entities maintain all these data in any one system or location. Furthermore, the use of the term “data source” is not meant to imply the use of computerized systems for source information. Instead, the term is used in a broad way to include many sources of information.
45. Managerial cost accounting, financial accounting, and budgetary accounting draw information as needed from the common data source. The data obtained by each of these is processed to attain specific objectives by reporting useful information.

#### Relationship to Financial Accounting

46. As shown in Figure 1 by their overlap, managerial cost accounting and financial accounting are closely related or integrated. To some degree, this is due to the historical development of cost accounting as a method for more detailed scorekeeping with the requirement to provide inventory values for external financial reporting purposes.<sup>11</sup> In part, it is because cost information generally originates with transactions recorded for financial accounting purposes.
47. While inventory valuation is still part of the fundamental relationship, managerial cost accounting serves financial accounting in several other ways. Fundamentally, managerial cost accounting should assist financial accounting in determining the results of operations during a fiscal period by providing relevant data that are accumulated to produce operating expenses. These data include the allocation of capitalized costs to periods of time or units of usage.
48. Traditionally, managerial cost accounting information pertaining to financial accounting has involved costs of past transactions and the assignment of transaction value to fiscal periods

---

<sup>10</sup>The makeup of core data and environmental data is discussed in Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts No. 1, *Objectives of Federal Financial Reporting*, Chapter 7, and, therefore, a detailed discussion is not provided here.

<sup>11</sup>Coulthurst, Nigel and John Piper, “The State of Cost and Management Accounting,” *Management Accounting*, April 1986.

---

and outputs. These purposes and uses are closely aligned with the financial accounting activity and traditional external financial reporting. This past cost aspect has been acknowledged in *Objectives of Federal Financial Reporting* which states that “financial accounting is largely concerned with assigning the value of past transactions to appropriate time periods.”<sup>12</sup>

### Relationship to Budgetary Accounting

49. Managerial cost accounting should also provide budgetary accounting with cost information. However, the two are not as closely aligned as is the case with financial accounting (see Figure 1). Mostly, this is because costs are usually recorded, accumulated, and allocated by managerial cost accounting on an accrual basis of accounting which is different from the obligation or cash basis generally used in budgetary accounting.
50. Still, managerial cost accounting does provide cost information to budgetary accounting for use in preparing yearly and long-term budgets for required materials, supplies, equipment, human resources, and other resources needed to produce different levels of outputs. Managerial cost accounting also helps in making many budgetary decisions such as those concerning future capital expenditures and purchase/lease alternatives.
51. It is important to note that the Board’s authority does not extend to recommending budgetary standards or budgetary concepts, and that is not the purpose of this statement.<sup>13</sup> However, the Board is committed to providing relevant and reliable cost accounting information that supports budget planning, formulation, and execution.

### Cost Information for Management Purposes

52. Managerial cost accounting produces information directly for management use, sometimes employing data produced by the budgetary and financial accounting processes. Cost information is used for many different purposes which can be generally classified into five types: performance measurement; cost reduction and control; determination of reimbursements and fee or price setting; program authorization, modification, and discontinuation decisions; and decisions to contract out work or make other changes in the methods of production.
53. To meet these needs, managerial cost accounting should use basic cost data and non-financial or programmatic data. For example, it tracks units of output produced and input

---

<sup>12</sup>Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts No. 1, *Objectives of Federal Financial Reporting*, par. 168.

<sup>13</sup>Memorandum of Understanding establishing the FASAB, October 10, 1990.

---

used including the amount of labor in terms of employees or employee-hours. Sometimes, information from cost analysis is used to compare actual to predetermined or anticipated costs. An organization may use cost estimates, cost studies, and cost finding techniques.

54. While managerial cost accounting is concerned not only with past costs and future costs, one of its most important features is the use of present costs to assist management. This current cost aspect of managerial cost accounting is referred to in the *Objectives of Federal Financial Reporting* where it states that “accounting data may be further assigned, allocated, or associated with units of activity or production, segments of organizations, etc., within the same time period. These kinds of intraperiod allocations are developed most extensively in the branch of accounting called cost accounting. Neither the FASB nor the GASB has devoted much attention to this branch of accounting, but the FASAB, because of its unique mission, will need to do so.”<sup>14</sup> Managerial cost accounting information pertaining to present costs is most often used for controlling and reducing those costs, controlling work processes, and measuring current performance.

### Reporting Relationships

55. Proper financial management requires that the three accounting processes work closely together to provide useful reporting to both internal and external users. The internal-external dual focus of federal reporting has been established in the *Objectives of Federal Financial Reporting*. It states that “The FASAB and its sponsors believe that any description of federal financial reporting objectives should consider the needs of both internal and external users and the decisions they make.” In addition, it says that “the FASAB... considers the information needs of both internal and external users. In part, this is because the distinction between internal and external users is in many ways less significant for the federal government than for other entities.” It goes on to classify the users of financial information into four major groups: program managers, executives, the Congress, and citizens.<sup>15</sup> These categories include both internal and external users.
56. Federal financial reporting encompasses general and special purpose reports to meet the needs of the four user groups. Information produced by managerial cost accounting appears in or influences both types of reports.<sup>16</sup> As discussed above, managerial cost accounting should provide information for use by both financial accounting and budgetary accounting.

---

<sup>14</sup>Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts No. 1, *Objectives of Federal Financial Reporting*, par. 174.

<sup>15</sup>*Ibid.*, pars. 23, 25, and par. 75.

<sup>16</sup>The types of general purpose and special purpose reports are discussed in Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts No. 1, *Objectives of Federal Financial Reporting*, Chapter 7.

---

That information is used by those processes in producing both general purpose and special purpose reports.

57. Managerial cost accounting also results in reports of its own. Most often these are special purpose reports designed for internal users, typically program and line managers. However, they may be for groups generally considered external users.
58. One of the most important aspects of reporting in which managerial cost accounting plays a large role is that of performance reporting. Measuring and reporting actual performance against established goals is essential to assess governmental accountability. Cost information is necessary in establishing strategic goals, measuring service efforts and accomplishments, and relating efforts to accomplishments. The importance of cost information in relation to performance measurement and performance reporting has been recognized in the *Objectives of Federal Financial Reporting*, which said “One reason for performing cost accounting is to assist in performance measurement” and it also stated that “The topics of cost and performance measurement are related because it is by associating cost with activities or ‘cost objectives’ that accounting can make much of its contribution to reporting on performance.”<sup>17</sup>

---

## Basis Of Accounting And Recognition/measurement Methods

59. Costs may be measured, analyzed, and reported in many ways. A particular cost measurement has meaning only when considering its purpose. The measurement of costs can vary depending upon the circumstances and purpose for which the measurement is to be used. In *Objectives of Federal Financial Reporting*, it is stated that “the Board’s own focus is on developing generally accepted accounting standards for reporting on the financial operations, financial position, and financial condition of the federal government and its component entities and other useful financial information. This implies a variety of measures of costs and other information that complements the information available in the budget [emphasis added].”<sup>18</sup>
60. In addition, it is stated that “In defining the proper measurement, assignment, and allocation of cost for a given purpose, selecting the appropriate accounting method and whether to use full costing should be carefully considered.”<sup>19</sup> Further, it added that “The accrual basis of

---

<sup>17</sup>Ibid., par. 174 and par. 192.

<sup>18</sup>Ibid., par. 191.

<sup>19</sup>Ibid., par. 196.

---

accounting generally provides a better matching of costs to the production of goods and services, but its use and application for any given purpose must be carefully evaluated.”<sup>20</sup>

61. Therefore, managerial cost accounting should provide cost information using a basis of accounting and recognition/measurement standards that are appropriate for the intended use of the information. When managerial cost accounting is used to supply information for use by financial accounting and financial reporting, that information should be consistent with the basis of accounting and recognition/measurement standards required by federal accounting principles. Traditionally this has meant the use of accrual accounting and historical cost measurement, particularly in general purpose reports.
62. When managerial cost accounting is used to supply information for the preparation and review of budgets, cost data should be consistent with the basis of accounting and recognition/measurement used in financial reporting, but may be adjusted to meet the budgetary information needs.
63. Special purpose cost studies and analyses are sometimes performed for decision making. In those studies and analyses, management may need to develop cost data beyond those currently reported in general purpose financial reports. For example, in making planning decisions, management may develop replacement costs and capital costs. However, the basis and methods used should be appropriate for the circumstances and consistent with the intended purposes.

---

## Reconciliation Of Information

64. Different bases of accounting will produce different costs for the same item, activity, or entity. This can confuse users of cost information. Therefore, reports that use different accounting bases or different recognition and measurement methods should be reconcilable, and should fully explain those bases and methods. Regardless of the type of report in which it is presented, cost information should ultimately be traceable back to the original common data source.
65. To be reconcilable, the amount of the differences in the information reported should be ascertainable and the reasons for the differences should be explainable. In some situations, informational differences may be clearly understandable without further explanation. However, other cases may require a narrative statement concerning the differences. In complicated situations, a schedule or table may be required to fully explain the differences.

---

<sup>20</sup>Ibid., par. 197.

- 
66. Financial reporting has long recognized the necessity for reconciliation between information reported on different accounting bases. Reconciliations have been required in federal financial reports to show and explain significant differences between budget reports and financial statements prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles.

---

## Managerial Cost Accounting Standards

---

### Requirement For Cost Accounting

**Each reporting entity<sup>21</sup> should accumulate and report the cost of its activities on a regular basis for management information purposes. Costs may be accumulated either through the use of cost accounting systems or through the use of cost finding techniques.**

67. Cost information is essential to effective financial management and should play an important role in federal financial reporting. Managerial cost accounting processes are the means of providing cost information in an efficient and reliable manner on a continuing basis.

### Need For Consistent Cost Accounting On A Regular Basis

68. To perform managerial cost accounting on a “regular basis” means that entities should establish procedures to accumulate and report costs continuously, routinely, and consistently for management information purposes. Consistent and regular cost accounting is needed to meet the second objective of federal financial reporting which states information should be provided to help the user determine the costs of providing specific programs and activities and the composition of, and changes in those costs. That objective also requires the reporting of performance information of federal programs and the changes over time in that performance in relation to the costs.
69. The requirement for managerial cost accounting on a regular and consistent basis supports recent legislative actions. The CFO Act of 1990 states that agency CFOs shall provide for the development and reporting of cost information and the periodic measurement of performance. In addition, the GPRA of 1993 requires each agency, for each program, to establish performance indicators and measure or assess relevant outputs, service levels, and outcomes of each program as a basis for comparing actual results with established goals. The

---

<sup>21</sup>The term “reporting entity” as used in this document conveys the same meaning as defined in FASAB Statement of Recommended Accounting Concepts No. 2, *Entity and Display* (May 1995).

---

nature of these legislative mandates requires reporting entities to develop and report cost information on a consistent and regular basis.

70. The managerial cost accounting processes consist of collecting data from the common data source, processing that data, and reporting cost and output information in general purpose and special purpose reports. Appropriate procedures and practices should also be established to enable the collection, measurement, accumulation, analysis, interpretation, and communication of cost information. This can be accomplished through the use of a cost accounting system or the use of cost finding techniques and other cost studies and analyses. A cost accounting “system” is an organized grouping of methods and activities designed to consistently produce reliable cost information.

### Basic Cost Accounting Processes

71. Regardless of whether a reporting entity uses a cost accounting system or cost finding techniques, the methods and procedures followed should be designed to perform at least a certain minimum level of cost accounting and provide a basic amount of cost information necessary to accomplish the many objectives associated with planning, decision making, control, and reporting. The more important of these minimum criteria for cost accounting are associated with the standards in the remainder of this statement. Others are also important.
- Responsibility Segments - Cost information should be collected by responsibility segments which have been identified by management and outputs should be defined for each responsibility segment.<sup>22</sup>
  - Full Costing - Each reporting entity should measure the full cost of outputs so that total operational costs and total unit costs of outputs can be determined. “Full cost” includes the cost of goods or services provided by other entities when the applicable criteria are met.<sup>23</sup>
  - Costing Methodology - The costing methodology used (e.g., activity-based costing, job order costing, standard costing, etc.) should be appropriate for management’s needs and the operating environment.<sup>24</sup>
  - Performance Measurement - Cost accounting should provide information needed to determine and report service efforts and accomplishments and information necessary to meet the requirements of the GPRA or interface with a system that provides such

---

<sup>22</sup>See standard in this statement concerning responsibility segments.

<sup>23</sup>See standard concerning full costs and standard concerning inter-entity costing.

<sup>24</sup>See standard concerning costing methodology.

---

information. This includes the quantity of inputs and outputs and other non-financial information needed in the measurement of performance.

- Reporting Frequency - Cost information should be reported in a timely manner and on a regular basis consistent with the needs of management and the requirements of both budgetary and financial reporting.
- Standard General Ledger - Managerial cost accounting should be integrated with general financial accounting. Both depend on the standard general ledger for basic financial transaction data.
- Precision of Information - Cost information supplied to internal and external users should be reliable and useful in making evaluations or decisions. At the same time, unnecessary precision and refinement of data should be avoided.
- Special Situations - The managerial cost accounting processes should be designed to accommodate any of management's special cost information needs that may arise due to unusual or special situations or circumstances. If such cost information is needed on a regular basis, appropriate procedures to provide it should be developed.
- Documentation - All managerial cost accounting activities, processes, and procedures should be documented by a manual, handbook, or guidebook of applicable accounting operations. This reference should outline the applicable activities, provide instructions for procedures and practices to be followed, list the cost accounts and subsidiary accounts related to the standard general ledger, and contain examples of forms and other documents used.

### Complexity Of Cost Accounting Processes

72. While each entity's managerial cost accounting should meet the basics discussed above, this standard does not specify the degree of complexity or sophistication of any managerial cost accounting process. Each reporting entity should determine the appropriate detail for its cost accounting processes and procedures based on several factors. These include the:
- nature of the entity's operations;
  - precision desired and needed in cost information;
  - practicality of data collection and processing;
  - availability of electronic data handling facilities;
  - cost of installing, operating, and maintaining the cost accounting processes; and
  - any specific information needs of management.
73. Some entities may find that they can purchase basic "off-the-shelf" cost accounting programs, systems, or processes, or adapt those of other federal agencies. All entities should consider using similar or compatible cost accounting processes throughout their component units to facilitate comparison and consolidation of cost information.

---

## Cost Findings, Studies, And Analyses

74. A cost accounting system is a continuous and systematic cost accounting process which may be designed to accumulate and assign costs to a variety of objects routinely or as desired by the management. Such a system may be best for some reporting entities.
75. Some entities may not need a sophisticated system to perform detailed cost accumulation and assignment. They need to accumulate and report costs regularly as required by this standard, but they may determine and analyze costs through special cost studies and analyses. Also, some entities may use a combination of a system supplemented by cost studies.
76. Cost information may be developed and savings achieved in some cases by the use of special cost studies or cost analyses to develop information helpful in certain decision making situations. In addition, cost finding techniques may be used to determine the cost of products or services. Cost finding is a method for determining the cost of producing goods or services using appropriate procedures. Cost finding techniques may also be useful for computing costs in cases where the information is not needed on a recurring basis.

---

## Responsibility Segments

**Management of each reporting entity should define and establish responsibility segments. Managerial cost accounting should be performed to measure and report the costs of each segment's outputs. Special cost studies, if necessary, should also be performed to determine the costs of outputs.**

77. The standard states that the management of each reporting entity should define and establish responsibility segments. This section explains the concept of responsibility segment, purposes of segmentation, and how responsibility segments can be structured.

### Defining Responsibility Segments

78. A responsibility segment is a component of a reporting entity<sup>25</sup> that is responsible for carrying out a mission, conducting a major line of activity, or producing one or a group of related products or services. In addition, responsibility segments usually possess the following characteristics:
- (1) Their managers report to the entity's top management directly;

---

<sup>25</sup>The term "reporting entity" referred to in this document conveys the same meaning as defined in FASAB Statement of Recommended Accounting Concepts No. 2, *Entity and Display* (May 1995).

- 
- (2) Their resources and results of operations can be clearly distinguished from those of other segments of the entity.<sup>26</sup>
79. A responsibility segment is a unit for which managerial cost accounting is performed. Entities may use a centralized accounting system or segment-based systems to provide cost information for each segment. For each segment, managerial cost accounting should:
- (1) Define and accumulate outputs, and if feasible, quantify each type of output in units;
  - (2) Accumulate costs and quantitative units of resources consumed in producing the outputs; and
  - (3) Assign costs to outputs, and calculate the cost per unit of each type of output.
80. Some reporting entities may have only one responsibility segment, if they perform one single mission or one type of service. Other reporting entities may have several responsibility segments. Also, a sub-organization of the federal government may be a reporting entity in itself and, at the same time, it may also be a responsibility segment of a higher level reporting entity to which it belongs. The Forest Service, for example, may be a reporting entity because it may meet the reporting entity criteria. As such, it may establish responsibility segments for itself. At the same time, the Forest Service may be regarded as a responsibility segment of the Department of Agriculture, of which it is a component.
81. However, for a given reporting entity, its management should establish one or more responsibility segments to perform managerial cost accounting functions.

### Purposes Of Segmentation

82. A basic purpose of dividing an entity into segments is to determine and report the costs of services and products that each segment produces and delivers. Many federal departments and agencies manage programs that produce a variety of goods and services. Accounting for entity-wide revenues and expenses in aggregate would serve financial reporting for the entity, but would not serve costing purposes. In order to determine the cost of each type of service or product, it is necessary to divide an entity into segments such that each segment is responsible for certain types of services or products. Each segment can then be used as a vehicle for accumulating costs incurred by the segment to match with its outputs. Each segment can use a cost methodology that is best suited to its operations.

---

<sup>26</sup>These two characteristics make responsibility segments, as the term is used in this document, differ from cost centers. A cost center can be at any level of an organization and may not report to the top management directly. As will be explained later, a responsibility segment can contain cost centers in itself.

- 
83. Another important purpose of segmentation is to facilitate cost control and management. Cost information provided for each segment helps managers to examine costs of specific resources consumed and activities performed in each segment. Managers can analyze cost variances in both dollars and the units of resources consumed against budgets or standards. Since each segment performs a particular pattern of processes and activities to produce its output, managers can analyze those processes and activities to compare their costs with the value they contribute to the output.
84. For entities that consist of components engaging in diverse lines of activities, it is desirable to provide financial reports that display information for significant components individually and of the entity in its entirety.<sup>27</sup> Some entities may find costs accumulated by segments useful in support of financial reporting by components.
85. For internal management, segmentation could also facilitate performance measurement. Since each segment is responsible for a mission, or a line of activity to produce a certain type of output, performance goals can be set for each segment based on its specific tasks and operating patterns. Information on costs, outputs, and outcomes related to each segment can be used to measure its performance against the goals. The results of the segment performance measurement could also support external reporting on performance measures for the entire reporting entity or its major programs.

### Structuring Responsibility Segments

86. Reporting entity management should define and structure its responsibility segments. The designation of responsibility segments should be based on the following factors: (a) the entity's organization structure, (b) its lines of responsibilities and missions, (c) its outputs (goods or services it delivers), and (d) budget accounts and funding authorities. However, the predominant factor is the reporting entity's organization structure and its existing responsibility components, such as bureaus, administrations, offices, and divisions within a department.
87. The U.S. General Services Administration, for example, provides five distinct services: (1) managing public buildings, (2) distributing supplies, (3) providing travel and transportation services, (4) managing information resources (including communication and data processing services), and (5) disposal of real properties. Each of those service areas could be designated as a responsibility segment. The Department of Veterans Affairs (VA), among its other services, provides health care to veterans, pays veterans' compensation and pension

---

<sup>27</sup>This point is discussed in FASAB Statement of Recommended Accounting Concepts No. 2, *Entity and Display*, pars. 75-76.

---

benefits, and provides home loans and home loan guarantees to veterans. Each of these program areas could constitute a responsibility segment.

88. Since responsibility segments are major parts of an entity, some segments may carry more than one program. Some programs may be jointly managed by two or more segments. Thus, each segment must accumulate costs for each type of output produced for various programs. To accomplish this, a network of cost centers can be established within a segment to accumulate costs. Managers of each cost center will be provided with information to control and manage costs within their area of responsibility. Depending on operational patterns and cost methods, cost centers can be structured along different dimensions, such as organizational units, operating processes, and activities.

---

## Full Cost

**Reporting entities should report the full costs of outputs in general purpose financial reports. The full cost of an output produced by a responsibility segment is the sum of (1) the costs of resources consumed by the segment that directly or indirectly contribute to the output, and (2) the costs of identifiable supporting services provided by other responsibility segments within the reporting entity, and by other reporting entities.**

89. This standard states that reporting entities should measure and report the full costs of their outputs in general purpose financial reports. "Outputs" means products and services generated from the consumption of resources. The full cost of a responsibility segment's output is the total amount of resources used to produce the output. This includes direct and indirect costs that contribute to the output, regardless of funding sources. It also includes costs of supporting services provided by other responsibility segments or entities. The standard does not require full cost reporting in federal entities' internal reports or special purpose cost studies. Entity management can decide on a case-by-case basis whether full cost is appropriate and should be used for internal reporting and special purpose cost studies.

## Direct Costs

90. Direct costs are costs that can be specifically identified with an output. All direct costs should be included in the full cost of outputs. Typical direct costs in the production of an output include:
- (a) Salaries and other benefits for employees who work directly on the output;
  - (b) Materials and supplies used in the work;

- 
- (c) Various costs associated with office space, equipment, facilities, and utilities that are used exclusively to produce the output; and
  - (d) Costs of goods or services received from other segments or entities that are used to produce the output (See discussions and explanations in the next section on “Inter-Entity Costs”).

### Indirect Costs

91. Indirect costs are costs of resources that are jointly or commonly used to produce two or more types of outputs but are not specifically identifiable with any of the outputs. Typical examples of indirect costs include costs of general administrative services, general research and technical support, security, rent, employee health and recreation facilities, and operating and maintenance costs for buildings, equipment, and utilities. There are two levels of indirect costs:
- (a) Indirect costs incurred within a responsibility segment. These indirect costs should be assigned to outputs on a cause-and-effect basis, if such an assignment is economically feasible, or through reasonable allocations. (See discussions on cost assignments in the “Costing Methodology” section.)
  - (b) Costs of support services that a responsibility segment receives from other segments or entities. The support costs should be first directly traced or assigned to various segments that receive the support services. They should then be assigned to outputs.
92. A reporting entity and its responsibility segments may incur general management and administrative support costs that cannot be traced, assigned, or allocated to segments and their outputs. These unassigned costs are part of the organization costs, and they should be reported on the entity’s financial statements (such as the Statement of Net Costs) as costs not assigned to programs.<sup>28</sup>

### Certain Cost Elements

#### **Costs of Employees’ Benefits**

93. Employee benefits include:

---

<sup>28</sup>A similar explanation is provided in FASAB Statement of Recommended Accounting Concepts No. 2, *Entity and Display*, par. 95.

- 
- (a) Health and life insurance benefits for current employees covered in part by the government's contribution to health and life insurance premiums;
  - (b) Pension benefits for employees, their survivors, and dependents, covered by defined pension plans such as Civil Service Retirement System (CSRS), Federal Employees Retirement Plan (FERS), and Military Retirement System (MRS);
  - (c) Health and life insurance benefits for retired employees, their survivors and dependents, covered in part by the government's contribution to health and life insurance premiums, and referred to as "other retirement benefits" (ORB) in this document;
  - (d) Other postemployment benefits (OPEB) for terminated and inactive employees, which include severance payments, training and counseling, continued health care, and unemployment and workers compensation.
94. Most of the employee benefit programs are covered by trust funds administered by the Office of Personnel Management (OPM) and the Department of Defense (DoD). Contributions to the trust funds come from three sources: current and retired employees, employing agencies, and direct appropriations. The management expenses of the trust funds are paid with the funds' receipts.
95. Federal financial accounting standards require that the employing entity accrue the costs to the federal government of providing pension and ORB benefits to employees and recognize the costs as an expense when the benefits are earned.<sup>29</sup> The employing entity should recognize those expenses regardless of whether the benefits are funded by the reporting entity or by direct appropriations to the trust funds. This principle should also be applied to health and life insurance benefits for current employees and comparable benefits for military personnel. The costs of employee benefits incurred by responsibility segments should be directly traced or assigned to outputs.
96. OPEB costs include severance payments, counseling and training, health care, and workers compensation benefits paid to former or inactive employees. OPEB costs are often incurred as a result of such events as reductions in force or on-the-job injuries of employees. Federal financial accounting standards require that OPEB costs be reported as an expense for the period during which a future outflow or other sacrifice of resources is probable and measurable on the basis of events occurring on or before the accounting date.<sup>30</sup>

---

<sup>29</sup>FASAB Exposure Draft, *Accounting for Liabilities of the Federal Government* (November 7, 1994), pars. 62-99.

<sup>30</sup>*Ibid.*, pars. 100-102.

---

97. Since the recognition of OPEB costs is linked to the occurrence of an OPEB event rather than the production of output, in many instances, assigning OPEB costs recognized for a period to output of that period would distort the cost of output. In special purpose cost studies or cost findings, management may distribute OPEB costs over a number of years in the past to determine the costs of the outputs that the OPEB recipients helped to produce.

### **Costs of Public Assistance and Social Insurance Programs**

98. Major costs of welfare, insurance, and grant programs are the costs of resources transferred from the federal government to individuals and state and local governments. Some of them are referred to as “transfer payments.” The following are some typical public assistance and insurance programs:

- Grants, such as aid to state and local governments;
- Subsidies, such as agricultural commodity price support and stabilization programs;
- Credit and insurance costs, such as the Family Education Loan Program and Savings Association Insurance;
- Welfare payments such as Aid to Families with Dependent Children (AFDC); and,
- Social insurance, such as the Old Age, Survivors, and Disability Insurance Program.

99. The full cost of such a program includes: (a) the costs of federal resources that have been or will be transferred to individuals and state/local governments, and (b) the costs of operating the programs. These two types of costs should be recognized on a basis of accounting that is prescribed within the Federal Financial Accounting Standards. These two types of costs should be separately identified so that each can be used for different analytic purposes.

100. The costs resulting from transfer payments are determined by the level of grants, subsidies, entitlement benefits, credit subsidies, or loss payments made under insurance and guarantee agreements. They are also determined by the number of eligible persons who receive the transfer payments. The program cost of AFDC, for example, depends on the average payment per family, the number of eligible families, and the federal government’s share in the payments (some payments are made by state and local governments). Information on this type of cost is useful for making policy decisions about levels of subsidies or benefits, eligibility of recipients, and how transfer payments are made. This cost information is also useful for measuring the cost-effectiveness of a transfer payment program.

101. Program operating costs, on the other hand, are costs of managing the program and delivering the payments. They include the costs of personnel, supplies, equipment, and offices. The costs are related to such activities as screening benefit recipients for eligibility, keeping their accounts, making payments and collections, answering inquiries, etc. Information on this type of cost is useful in measuring the efficiency of program operations.

---

### Costs related to Property, Plant and Equipment

102. **Depreciation expense.** General property, plant, and equipment are used in the production of goods and services. Their consumption is recognized as depreciation expense. The depreciation expense incurred by responsibility segments should be included in the full costs of the goods and services that the segments produce.
103. **Recognizing property acquisition costs as expenses.** The costs of acquiring or constructing federal mission and heritage property, plant, and equipment may be charged to expenses at the time the acquisition costs are incurred.<sup>31</sup> Since the recognition of these expenses is linked to property acquisition rather than production of goods and services, those expenses should not be included in the full costs of goods and services. However, they are part of the costs of the entity or the program that makes the property acquisitions.

### Non-production costs

104. A responsibility segment may incur and recognize costs that are linked to events other than the production of goods and services. Two examples of these non-production costs were discussed earlier: (1) OPEB costs that are recognized as expenses when an OPEB event occurs, and (2) certain property acquisition costs that are recognized as expenses at the time of acquisition. Other non-production costs include reorganization costs, and nonrecurring cleanup costs resulting from facility abandonments that are not accrued. Since these costs are recognized for a period in which a particular event occurs, assigning these costs to goods and service produced in that period would distort the production costs. In special purpose cost studies, management may have reasons to determine historical output costs by distributing some of these costs to outputs over a number of past periods. Such distribution may be appropriate when: (a) experience shows that the costs are recurring in a regular pattern, **and** (b) a nexus can be established between the costs and the production of outputs that may have benefited from those costs.

---

<sup>31</sup>In FASAB Exposure Draft, *Accounting for Property, Plant, and Equipment*, the Board proposed that the costs of acquiring or constructing “federal mission” and “heritage” property, plant, and equipment be recognized as expenses when the costs are incurred. See the ED, pars. 98-117, pages 29-34.

---



---

## Inter-entity Costs

**Each entity's full cost should incorporate the full cost of goods and services that it receives from other entities. The entity providing the goods or services has the responsibility to provide the receiving entity with information on the full cost of such goods or services either through billing or other advice.**

**Recognition of inter-entity costs that are not fully reimbursed is limited to material items that (1) are significant to the receiving entity, (2) form an integral or necessary part of the receiving entity's output, and (3) can be identified or matched to the receiving entity with reasonable precision. Broad and general support services provided by an entity to all or most other entities should not be recognized unless such services form a vital and integral part of the operations or output of the receiving entity.**

105. As stated in the preceding standard, to fully account for the costs of the goods and services they produce, reporting entities should include the cost of goods and services received from other entities. Knowledge of these costs is helpful to top level management in controlling and assessing the operating environment. It is also helpful to other users in evaluating overall program costs and performance and in making decisions about resource allocations and changes in programs.

## Inter-entity Activities

106. Within the federal government, some reporting entities rely on other federal entities to help them achieve their missions. Often this involves support services, but may include the provision of goods. Sometimes these arrangements may be stipulated by law, but others are established by mutual agreement of the entities involved. Such relationships can be classified into two types depending upon funding methods.

- Provision of goods or services with reimbursement—In this situation, one entity agrees to provide goods or services to another with reimbursement at an agreed-upon price. The reimbursement price may or may not be enough to recover full costs. Usually the agreement is voluntarily established through an inter-agency agreement. Revolving funds can also be included in this group, because they are usually established to recover costs through sale of their outputs to other government entities. They are usually meant to be self-sustaining through their sales, without receiving additional appropriations. However, they do not always charge enough to cover full costs.
- Provision of goods or services without reimbursement—One entity provides goods or services to another entity free of charge. The agreement may be voluntary, legally mandated, or inherently established in the mission of the providing entity.

107. Recently, consideration has been given to expanding the concept of inter-entity support within the federal government. Under this concept, entities could sell their outputs on a competitive basis. Entities would have the authority to purchase goods or services from any federal or private provider. This is seen as a way to improve government efficiency through

---

competition since inefficient government providers would be forced to improve or stop providing these goods or services. This could result in consolidating support services in fewer governmental entities. Underlying this concept is the requirement that all costs be recognized in developing the price at which goods and services would be sold to other entities.

### Accounting And Implementation Guidance

108. If an entity provides goods or services to another entity, regardless of whether full reimbursement is received, the providing entity should continue to recognize in its accounting records the full cost of those goods or services. The full costs of the goods or services provided should also be reported to the receiving entity by the providing entity.
109. The receiving entity should recognize in its accounting records the full cost of the goods or services it receives as an expense or, if appropriate, as an asset (such as work-in-process inventory). The information on costs of non-reimbursed or under-reimbursed goods or services should be available from the providing entity. However, if such cost information is not provided, or is partially provided, a reasonable estimate may be used by the receiving entity. The estimate should be of the cost of the goods or services received (the estimate may be based on the market value of the goods or services received if an estimate of the cost cannot be made). To the extent that reimbursement is less than full cost, the receiving entity should recognize the difference in its accounting records as a financing source.<sup>32</sup> Inter-entity expenses/assets and financing sources would be eliminated for any consolidated financial statements covering both entities.
110. ...[This paragraph was rescinded by SFFAS 30, par. 8 effective for periods beginning after September 30, 2008. Please see SFFAS 4 at [www.fasab.gov/standards.html](http://www.fasab.gov/standards.html) for unamended text effective prior to that date.]

---

<sup>32</sup>See Statement of Recommended Federal Accounting Concepts No. 2, *Entity and Display*, par. 65. See also, FASAB Exposure Draft, *Accounting for Liabilities of the Federal Government*, pars. 62-99, pages 26-46, which addresses accounting for pensions and other retirement benefits (ORB). The payment of pension and ORB costs for an entity by another entity has often been likened to providing goods and services. In the case of pensions, employees of the reporting entity provide services to that entity and part of the salary-related cost is paid by a different entity. The pension administering entity does not provide goods or services to the reporting entity (other than normal pension administration services), but rather pays their costs directly. The difference is subtle but important. However, the accounting is similar. This document is consistent with the section of the liabilities exposure draft dealing with accounting for pensions and other retirement benefits.

---

## Recognition Criteria

111. Ideally, all inter-entity costs should be recognized. This is especially important when those costs constitute inputs to government goods or services provided to non-federal entities for a fee or user charge. The fees and user charges should recover the full costs of those goods and services.<sup>33</sup> Thus, the cost of inter-entity goods or services needs to be recognized by the receiving entity in order to determine fees or user charges for goods and services sold outside the federal government.

...[Selected text was rescinded by SFFAS 30, par. 9 effective for periods beginning after September 30, 2008. Please see SFFAS 4 at [www.fasab.gov/standards.html](http://www.fasab.gov/standards.html) for unamended text effective prior to that date.]

112. However, the situation is often different with goods or services transferred within the federal government that do not involve eventual sales to entities outside the federal government. The federal government in its entirety is an economic entity. Therefore, it is reasonable to expect some flow of goods or services between reporting entities as those entities assist each other in fulfilling their missions and operating objectives. There are some cases in which the cost of non-reimbursed or under-reimbursed goods or services received from other entities need not be recognized as part of the cost of the receiving entity. The following general criteria are provided to help in determining the types of inter-entity costs that should or should not be recognized.

- **Materiality**—As with other accounting standards, the provisions of this standard need not be applied to immaterial items. However, in the context of deciding which inter-entity transactions are to be recognized, materiality, as used here, is directed to the individual inter-entity transaction rather than to all inter-entity transactions as a whole. **Under this concept, a much more limited recognition is intended than would be achieved by reference to the general materiality concept.**

In this context, then, materiality should be considered in terms of the importance of the inter-entity transaction to the receiving entity. The importance of the transactions, and thereby their recognition, should be judged in light of the following factors:

- **Significance to the entity**—The cost of the good or service is large enough that management should be aware of the cost when making decisions.
- **Directness of relationship to the entity's operations**—The good or service provided is an integral part of and necessary to the output produced by the entity.
- **Identifiability**—The cost of the good or service provided to the entity can be matched to the entity with reasonable precision.

---

<sup>33</sup>OMB Circular A-25 addresses user charges by federal entities.

---

The determination of whether the cost is material requires the exercise of considerable judgment, based on the specific facts and circumstances of each transaction.

- **Broad, general support**—Some entities provide broad, general support to many, if not all, reporting entities in the federal government. Most often this type of support involves the establishment of policies and/or the provision of general guidance. The costs of such broad services should not be recognized as an expense (or asset) by the receiving entities when there is no reimbursement of costs. Thus the standard does not apply when support is of a general nature provided to all or most entities of the federal government.

An example of this situation can be found in the Office of Management and Budget which establishes policy and provides general guidance to all parts of the executive branch of government. The costs of OMB should not be spread over all reporting entities because the services provided are (1) general and broad in scope, (2) provided to almost all reporting entities in the executive branch, and (3) not specifically or directly tied to the receiving entity's outputs.

On the other hand, some services provided, under certain circumstances, should still be recognized even though they may be considered broad and general in nature if such services are integral to the operations of the receiving entity. Such services include check writing by the Department of Treasury or legal activities performed by the Department of Justice. For example, when the issuance of checks is integral to the operations of an entity (e.g., the Internal Revenue Service and the Social Security Administration), the receiving entity should include the full cost of issuing checks in the full cost of its outputs. However, if the issuance of checks is insignificant and incidental to the operations of an entity, the entity should not normally recognize that cost.

113. The decision as to whether the cost of non-reimbursed or under-reimbursed goods and services should be recognized requires the use of judgement. None of the criteria listed above are, by themselves, fully or exclusively determinative. They should be considered in combination. Ultimately, inclusion or exclusion of the cost should be decided based on the specific facts and circumstances of each case, with consideration of the degree to which inclusion or exclusion would change or influence the actions and decisions of a reasonable person relying on the information provided.

#### Accounting Example

114. The following tables provide an example of the accounting entries to be made when the receiving entity (Agency R) recognizes an expense for services received from a providing

entity (Agency P) on a non-reimbursable basis. In the example, the full costs of these services to Agency P are \$100,000.

115. Agency R recognizes an “Expense of services provided by Agency P” equal to the full cost of the services received. It also recognizes a financing source, “Services provided by Agency P,” equal to the amount not reimbursed, which in this case is the full \$100,000. Agency P recognizes an “Expense of services provided to Agency R” equal to the full cost of the services provided with a credit to “Appropriations used.”

**Table 1: Agency R’s Accounting Entries\***

|  | Debit     | Credit    |
|--|-----------|-----------|
| Expense of services provided by Agency P | \$100,000 |           |
| Services provided by Agency P            |           | \$100,000 |

Note: This example shows the cost recognized as an expense. However, as discussed in the text, it may be an asset.

**Table 2: Agency P’s Accounting Entries**

|  | Debit     | Credit    |
|--|-----------|-----------|
| Expense of services provided to Agency R | \$100,000 |           |
| Appropriated capital                     |           | \$100,000 |
| Fund balance with Treasury               | \$100,000 |           |
| Appropriated capital used                |           | \$100,000 |

## Costing Methodology

**Costs of resources consumed by responsibility segments should be accumulated by type of resource. Outputs produced by responsibility segments should be accumulated and, if practicable, measured in units. The full costs of resources that directly or indirectly contribute to the production of outputs should be assigned to outputs through costing methodologies or cost finding techniques that are most appropriate to the segment’s operating environment and should be followed consistently.**

**The cost assignments should be performed by the following methods listed in the order of preference: (a) directly tracing costs wherever feasible and economically practicable, (b) assigning costs on a cause-and-effect basis, or (c) allocating costs on a reasonable and consistent basis.**

116. This standard addresses two aspects of costing: cost accumulation and cost assignment. Each of them is explained and discussed below.

---

## Cost Accumulation

117. Cost accumulation is the process of collecting cost data in an organized way. The standard requires that costs be accumulated by responsibility segments. The accumulation is for costs incurred within each responsibility segment, and does not involve the assignment or allocation of costs incurred by other supporting segments, which will be discussed in the latter part of this section.
118. In the section of this document relating to “Responsibility segments,” it was explained that: “A responsibility segment is a component of a reporting entity, that is responsible for carrying out a mission, conducting a major line of activity, or producing one or a group of related products or services.” The accumulation of costs by responsibility segments does not mean that each responsibility segment must have its own accounting system. The reporting entity may have a centralized accounting system, but the system should be capable of identifying costs with responsibility segments.
119. This standard also requires that the accumulated costs be classified by type of resource, such as costs of employees, materials, capital, utilities, rent, etc. When appropriate and cost effective, information on quantitative units related to various cost categories should be maintained. For example, staff-days may be reported for staff salaries and benefits, and gallons of gasoline consumed for gasoline costs. The quantitative units are useful for cost assignments, and are indispensable for measuring efficiency in using resources.

## Cost Assignment

120. The term “cost assignment” refers to the process that identifies accumulated costs with reporting periods and cost objects. The assignment of costs to time periods is to recognize costs either as expenses or assets for each reporting period. It is governed by accounting standards on recognition of assets and expenses, and will not be addressed in this document. This section addresses cost assignment to cost objects. The word “assignment” used in this document includes various methods of attributing costs, such as direct tracing, cause-and-effect basis, and cost allocations.
121. The term “cost object” refers to an activity or item whose cost is to be measured.<sup>34</sup> In a broad sense, a cost object can be an organizational division, program, activity, task, product, service, or customer. However, the purpose of cost accounting by a responsibility segment is to measure the costs of its outputs. Thus, the final cost objects of a responsibility segment are its outputs: the services or products that the segment produces and delivers, the missions or tasks that the segment performs, or the customers or markets that the responsibility

---

<sup>34</sup>Some literature, the CASB pronouncements for example, use the term “cost objective” for the same meaning.

---

segment serves. There may be intermediate cost objects that are used in the course of the cost assignment process.

122. Some responsibility segments of an entity may provide supporting services or deliver intermediate products to other segments within the same entity. The costs of the supporting services and intermediate products should be assigned to the segments that receive the services and products. This is referred to as the intra-entity cost assignments. Also, in accordance with the inter-entity cost standard discussed in the preceding section, an entity should recognize inter-entity costs for goods and services received from other federal entities. The inter-entity costs should also be assigned to the responsibility segments that use the inter-entity services and products.
123. Thus, with respect to each responsibility segment, the costs that are to be assigned to outputs include: (a) direct and indirect costs incurred within the responsibility segment, (b) costs of other responsibility segments that are assigned to the segment, and (c) inter-entity costs recognized by the receiving entity and assigned to the segment. If a responsibility segment produces one kind of output only, costs of resources used to produce the output are assigned to the output.
124. This standard is intended to establish a principle, rather than a methodology, for cost assignment. Also cost assignments may be performed in cost findings and studies or may be performed within a system on a regular basis. In principle, costs should be assigned to outputs in one of the methods listed below in the order of preference:
- (a) Directly tracing costs wherever economically feasible;
  - (b) Assigning costs on a cause-and-effect basis; and
  - (c) Allocating costs on a reasonable and consistent basis.
125. These principles apply to all levels of cost assignments including:
- (1) assigning inter-entity costs to segments, (2) assigning the costs of support services and intermediate products among segments of an entity (the intra-entity cost assignments), and (3) assigning direct and indirect costs to outputs.

### **Directly tracing costs to outputs**

126. Direct tracing applies to resources that are directly used in the production of an output. Examples of such resources include materials that are used in the production, employees who directly worked on the output, facilities and equipment used exclusively in the production of the output, and goods or services received from other entities that are directly used in the production of the output.

- 
127. The method of direct cost tracing usually relies on the observation, counting, and/or recording of the consumption of resource units, such as staff hours or days that are spent on a project or assignment, or gallons of fuel consumed in a transport mission. Direct tracing also applies to specific resources that are dedicated to particular outputs.
128. Direct cost tracing often minimizes distortion and ensures accuracy in cost assignments. However, it can be a relatively costly process. It should be applied only to items that account for a substantial portion of the cost of an output and only when it is economically feasible. For example, it is usually unnecessary to trace the cost of office supplies (pens, papers, computer disks, etc.) to various activities or outputs. The cost of so doing usually outweighs the benefit of the increased accuracy in assigning the resources.

#### **Assigning costs on a cause-and-effect basis**

129. For the costs that are not directly traced to outputs, it is preferable that they be assigned to them on a cause-and-effect basis. As mentioned earlier, the ultimate cost objects of a responsibility segment are its outputs. For costs that are not traced to the ultimate objects (outputs), intermediate objects can be established as links between resource costs and outputs. The links reflect a cause-and-effect relationship between resource costs and outputs. Costs that have a similar cause-and-effect relationship to outputs can be grouped into cost pools. (This similar relationship is referred to in some literature as the “cost pool homogeneity concept.”)
130. Activities or work elements that contribute to or support the production of outputs are commonly used as intermediate objects. This is based on the premise that on one hand, outputs require the performance of certain activities, and on the other hand the activities cause costs. Thus, an activity is considered a linkage between the cause and the effect. (See also, discussions on Activity-Based Costing later in this section.) In its policy statement, the Cost Accounting Standards Board expressed a similar view:
- “The preferred presentation of the relationship between the pooled cost and the benefiting cost objectives is a measure of the activity (input) of the function or functions represented by the pool of cost. This relationship can be measured in circumstances where there is direct and definitive relationship between the function or functions and the benefiting cost objectives.”<sup>35</sup>
131. For example, a computer technology department provides technical support to other departments of an organization. The costs of the department may be assigned to other departments on a cause-and-effect basis through two steps. In the first step, the costs are assigned to the activities of the department, such as hardware installation and maintenance,

---

<sup>35</sup>Cost Accounting Standards Board, Restatement of Objectives, Policies and Concepts, par. 2915.

software design and installation, or programming adjustments. In the second step, the costs of these activities are further assigned to other departments based on their consumption of the technical services.

132. Sometimes, an intermediate product, rather than an activity, can be used as a link between the costs and outputs. For example, a hospital laboratory's costs can first be assigned to various medical tests it runs. The costs of the tests can then be assigned to the operating units of the hospital that ordered the tests.

### Allocating costs

133. Sometimes, it might not be economically feasible to directly trace or assign costs on a cause-and-effect basis. These may include general management and support costs, depreciation, rent, maintenance, security, and utilities associated with facilities that are commonly used by various segments.
134. These supporting costs can be allocated to segments and outputs on a prorated basis. The cost allocations may involve two steps. The first step allocates the costs of support services to segments, and the second step allocates those costs to the outputs of each segment. The cost allocations are usually based on a relevant common denominator such as the number of employees, square footage of office space, or the amount of direct costs incurred in segments.
135. Suppose the total cost of a personnel department for a fiscal year is \$500,000, and it is allocated to two segments based on the number of employees of the two segments: segment A has 300 employees, and segment B has 200 employees. On the prorated basis, segment A should be allocated 60 percent, or \$300,000 of the personnel cost, and segment B should be allocated 40 percent, or \$200,000 of the personnel department cost. The allocation is shown below:

**Table 3: The Allocation of the Personnel Dept. Costs**

| Segment      | Employees  | Percent    | Allocated amount |
|--------------|------------|------------|------------------|
| A            | 300        | 60         | \$300,000        |
| B            | 200        | 40         | \$200,000        |
| <b>Total</b> | <b>500</b> | <b>100</b> | <b>\$500,000</b> |

136. For cost allocation purposes, indirect costs may be grouped into pools, and each pool is subject to one allocation base. Costs grouped into one pool should have similar

---

characteristics. The allocation base should be used consistently to allow cost comparison from one period to another.

137. Cost allocation is a relatively simple method of assigning indirect costs to cost objects. Users of the cost information should be aware that distortions in product costing often result from arbitrary cost allocations. In most cases, there is little correlation between an indirect cost and the allocation base, and the allocation is arbitrary. To assist cost analyses and cost findings, cost accounting should segregate costs that are traced or assigned to outputs from costs that are allocated to outputs.

### **Assigning common costs**

138. Facility and personnel resources may be shared by two or more activities either at the same time or in different times during a fiscal year. For example, a military aircraft maintained for war readiness may be used in peacetime to transport cargo. As another example, a plant may be used to process two or more products.
139. The cost assignment principles discussed in this section should apply to assigning costs to activities or outputs that share the use of resources. Costs that can be traced to each of the activities (or outputs) should be assigned to them directly. These include direct operating costs of each of the activities. For the military aircraft used in peacetime to transport cargo, for example, the costs of fuel and supplies, additional personnel who worked on the cargo, and other costs incidental to the transportation should be directly assigned to the transportation services.
140. To determine the full cost of each of the activities or outputs that share resources, indirect common costs should be assigned to those activities. The term “common costs” refers to the costs of maintaining and operating facilities and other resources that cannot be directly traced to any one of the activities or outputs that share the resources.<sup>36</sup> Common costs should be assigned to activities either on a cause-and-effect basis, if feasible, or through reasonable allocations.
141. Sometimes management may find it useful to designate primary and secondary activities that share resources. Primary activity is the primary purpose or mission for which the resources are made available. Secondary activities are those activities that are performed only if they will not interfere with the primary activity. Management can then determine two types of costs: (1) the costs that are necessary for the primary activity and are unavoidable even without the secondary activities, and (2) the costs that are caused by the secondary activities

---

<sup>36</sup>This definition is adapted from Statement No. 1 on Management Accounting: Management Accounting Glossary, published by the National Association of Accountants (Montvale, New Jersey: 1991), page 15.

---

and are incremental to the costs of the primary activity. This type of cost information can be produced through cost findings, and may help management in making resource allocation and capacity utilization decisions.

### **Cost-benefit considerations**

142. Throughout the discussions of this section, it is stated that a cost accumulation and assignment method would be used when it is economically feasible. A method is economically feasible if the benefits resulting from implementing the method outweigh its costs. It is not advantageous to use a costing method if it requires a large amount of resources and yet produces information of little value to users.
143. As a general rule, directly tracing costs and assigning costs on a cause-and-effect basis are more expensive than cost allocations, because they require detailed analyses and record-keeping for costs and activities. However, they are preferable because they produce more reliable cost information than cost allocations.

### **Selecting A Costing Methodology**

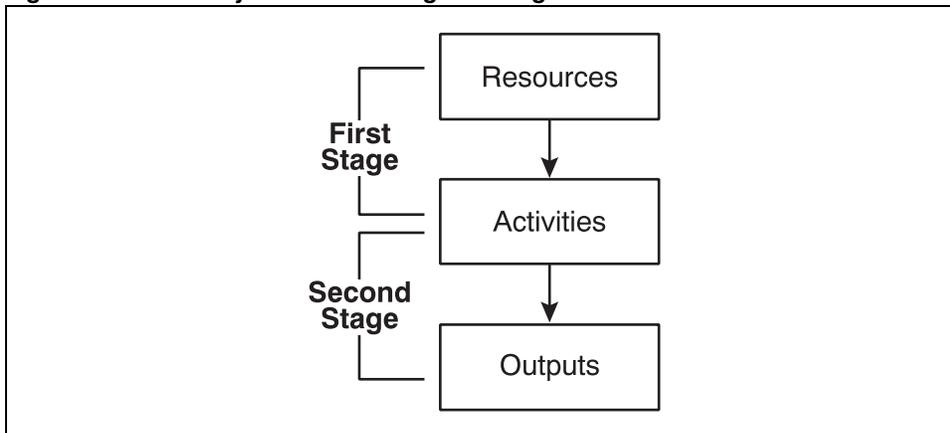
144. This standard does not require the use of a particular type of costing system or costing methodology. Federal entities are engaged in a broad range of diverse operations. A costing system appropriate for one type of operation may not be appropriate for other operations. At many federal agencies, cost accounting practices are either relatively new or experimental. It is too early to tell which cost systems are best for specific types of operations. As experience and research in cost accounting progress, reporting entities and responsibility segments may find a preferred costing methodology for their operations.
145. Agency and program management is in the best position to select a type of costing system that would meet its needs. In making the selection, management should evaluate alternative costing methods and select those that provide the best results under its operating environment.
146. The standard requires that a costing methodology, once adopted, be used consistently. Consistent use provides cost information that can be compared from year to year. However, this requirement does not preclude necessary improvements and refinements to the system or methodology, so long as the effect of any change is documented and explained. On the contrary, improvements are encouraged.
147. Several costing methodologies have been successful in the private sector and in some government entities. Four are briefly described below for agency consideration. It should be noted in particular that activity-based costing has gained broad acceptance by manufacturing and service industries as an effective managerial tool. Federal entities are encouraged to

study its potential within their own operations. In the following paragraphs, activity-based costing will be introduced with other well known costing methodologies, namely job order costing and process costing. Standard costing is also mentioned as an important cost management tool. It is important to note that those costing methodologies are not mutually exclusive. Both activity-based costing and standard costing can be applied to job order or process costing systems.

#### Activity-based costing (ABC)

148. ABC focuses on the activities of a production cycle, based on the premises that (a) an output requires activities to produce, and (b) activities consume resources. ABC systems use cost drivers to assign costs through activities to outputs. The ABC cost assignment is a two-stage procedure. The first stage assigns the costs of resources to activities and the second stage assigns activity costs to outputs. The procedure is illustrated in the following figure.<sup>37</sup>

**Figure 2: The Activity-Based Two Stage Costing Procedure**



149. Implementing an ABC system requires four major steps: (1) identify activities performed in a responsibility segment to produce outputs, (2) assign or map resources to the activities, (3) identify outputs for which the activities are performed, and (4) assign activity costs to the outputs. Each of the steps is briefly explained below.

<sup>37</sup>The figure and the accompanying discussions are based on Robin Cooper, Robert S. Kaplan, Lawrence S. Maisel, Eileen Morrissey, and Ronald M. Oehm, *Implementing Activity-Based Cost Management* (Montvale, NJ: Institute of Management Accountants, 1992), pages 9-13.

- 
- (1) Identify activities. This step requires an in-depth analysis of the operating processes of each responsibility segment. Each process may consist of one or more activities required by outputs. Activities may be classified into unit-level, batch-level, product sustaining, and facility sustaining activities.<sup>38</sup> Management may combine related small activities into larger activities to avoid excessive costing efforts.
  - (2) Assign resource costs to activities. This step assigns resource costs to the activities identified in step 1. The resource costs include direct and indirect costs usually recorded in general ledger accounts. Depending on feasibility and cost-benefit considerations, resource costs may be assigned to activities in three ways: (a) direct tracing; (b) estimation based on surveys, interviews, or statistical sampling; or (c) allocations.
  - (3) Identify outputs. This step identifies all of the outputs for which activities are performed and resources are consumed by a responsibility segment. The outputs can be products, services, or customers (persons or entities to whom a federal agency is required to provide goods or services). Omitting any output would result in overcharging costs to other outputs.
  - (4) Assign activity costs to outputs. In this step, activity costs are assigned to outputs using activity drivers. Activity drivers assign activity costs to outputs based on individual outputs' consumption or demand for activities. For example, a driver may be the number of times an activity is performed in producing a specific type of output (the transaction driver), or the length of time an activity is performed (the duration driver).
150. ABC can be used in conjunction with job order costing or process costing. For example, making direct loans to the public involves a series of processes, such as loan origination, credit review for individual applicants, preparing loan documents, valuation of collateral, making loan disbursements, computing fees and periodic payments, keeping records, and making collections. These are the “first category” activities that directly affect individual loans. ABC can be applied to this category of activities.
151. The direct loan operations also involve “second category” activities, such as those performed by loan officers to review and assess a portfolio of loans and make policy changes that affect an entire portfolio. If ABC is not used, the costs of the loan officers may be allocated to direct loans based on the number of loans disbursed, or based on the staff hours spent on processing all the loans. However, such an allocation tends to be arbitrary, because some loans require more of their time than others. Under ABC, the costs of loan officers would first be assigned to their portfolio review and workout activities that they perform, then the activity costs would be assigned to the groups of loans for which the activities are performed.

---

<sup>38</sup>Cooper, Kaplan, et al. page 20.

- 
152. A major advantage of using ABC is that it avoids or minimizes distortions in product costing that result from arbitrary allocations of indirect costs. By tracing costs through activities, ABC provides more accurate service or product costs. Experience in the private sector shows that by providing accurate cost measures, ABC has helped improve product costing, strategic pricing, and profit planning.
153. Also important is that ABC encourages management to evaluate the efficiency and cost-effectiveness of activities. Some ABC systems rank activities by the degree to which they add value to the organization or its outputs. Managers use such value rankings to focus their cost reduction programs. ABC encourages management to identify and examine (a) what activities are really needed (value-added activities) in order to accomplish a mission, deliver a service, or meet customer demand, (b) how activities can be modified to achieve cost savings or product improvements, and (c) what activities do not actually add value to services or products (non-value-added activities). ABC integrates with cycle time analysis and value-added analysis.

### **Job order costing**

154. Job order costing is a costing methodology that accumulates and assigns costs to discrete jobs. The word “jobs” refers to products, projects, assignments, or a group of similar outputs.
155. Each job has a number or code to accumulate costs. Resources spent are identified with the job code. Costs are traced to individual jobs to the extent economically feasible. Costs that cannot be directly traced are assigned to jobs either on a cause-and-effect basis or allocation basis.
156. Job order costing is appropriate for responsibility segments that produce special order products, or perform projects and assignments that differ in duration, complexity, or input requirements. Typical situations in the federal government in which job order costing would be appropriate are legal cases, audit assignments, research projects, and repair work for ships, aircraft, or vehicles.

### **Process costing**

157. Process costing is a method that accumulates costs by individual processing divisions (organization divisions that perform production processes). These processing divisions are involved in a continuous production flow, with each division contributing towards the completion of the end products. The output of a processing division either becomes the input of the next processing division or becomes a part of the end product.
158. Each division accumulates costs, assigns the costs to its outputs, and calculates the unit cost of its output. For each period, divisions prepare a cost and production report, showing the

---

costs, the completed units, and the work-in-process volume. When a certain number of completed units are transferred from a division to the next division, the costs of those units are also transferred and are eventually incorporated into the costs of the end product. Thus, the cost flow follows the physical flow of the production. The unit cost of the end product is the sum of the unit costs of all the divisions.

159. Process costing is appropriate for production of goods or services with the following characteristics: (a) the production involves a regular pattern of process, (b) its output consists of homogeneous units, and (c) all units are produced through the same process procedures. In the private sector, process costing is used by such industries as flour mills, steel foundries, oil refineries, and chemical processing plants. In government, it may be used by some activities that involve repetitive process procedures to deliver a large volume of similar goods or services. An example would be making entitlement benefit payments, which involves a series of consecutive processes for reviewing applications to establish their eligibility, computing the amount of benefits, and issuing checks.

### **Standard costing**

160. Standard costs are carefully predetermined or expected costs that can be applied to activities, services, or products on a per unit basis. Horngren describes standard costing as follows:

“A set of standards outlines how a task should be accomplished in nonfinancial terms (minutes, board feet) and how much it should cost. As work is being done, actual costs incurred are compared with standard costs for various tasks or activities to reveal variances. This feedback helps discover better ways of adhering to standards, of altering standards, and of accomplishing objectives.”<sup>39</sup>

161. Many organizations frequently review and update the standards to assure that they encourage improvements in efficiency and are within an attainable range.
162. Standard costing helps managers to formulate budgets, control costs, and measure performance. It can be used in conjunction with job order costing, process costing, and activity-based costing. It can be applied to specific outputs or activities, and it can also be applied to a responsibility segment in aggregate by comparing total actual costs with total standard costs based on outputs produced within a certain time period. Typical situations in the federal government in which standard costing would be appropriate are operations that produce services or products on a consistently repetitive basis. Agencies are encouraged to use standard costing in those situations.

---

<sup>39</sup>Horngren, Charles T. and George Foster, *Cost Accounting, A Managerial Emphasis*, 7th ed. (Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs: New Jersey, 1991), page 222.

---

---

## Appendix A: Basis For Conclusions

---

### The Nature of Concepts and Standards

163. The difference between accounting concepts and standards is significant. Statements of concepts are more general than statements of standards. Standards are intended to be specific guidance and authoritative in nature. Concepts generally do not contain specific recommendations that would, when issued by the Board's sponsors, become authoritative requirements for federal agencies. Concepts, instead, provide general guidance both to the Board and others. They are also intended to help preparers and users of financial information better understand federal accounting and financial reporting. While the differences can be easily stated, in reality the line between concepts and standards is often broad and presents many gray areas for interpretation.
164. When the Board began the project on managerial cost accounting, it anticipated the issuance of a recommended Statement of Concepts. Given the meager use of cost accounting within many federal agencies, a Statement of Concepts would provide both the Board and preparers of federal financial reports with overall guidance in the area and an indication of the future direction the Board might take in developing standards. However, as the Board and staff began working on the project, it became clear that action was needed to recommend standards for the development of cost information.
165. Cost accounting standards were needed because users of financial information, especially taxpayers and members of Congress, began putting more emphasis on the cost of government programs, products, and activities. The efforts to reduce government spending, control the deficit, and improve government functions necessitated information about the true costs of government. In addition, passage of the CFO Act and the GPRA required agencies to provide cost information as a part of improving their financial management and reporting. Furthermore, the NPR issued a recommendation that the Board move rapidly to recommend cost accounting standards.
166. The Board established the Cost Accounting Task Force to provide advise and guidance on the cost accounting project. On the task force were many individuals knowledgeable about cost accounting in the private sector as well as the limited federal cost accounting activities. The task force also recommended the establishment of cost accounting standards.
167. The Board issued the exposure draft as a recommended statement of standards. The Board knew, however, that since cost accounting is relatively new in the federal environment, the final statement necessarily would contain some conceptual material. Although the exposure draft did not present any direct questions concerning whether parts of the draft should be

---

viewed as concepts, the issue did arise in public hearings held in November 1994, and January 1995. In addition, a few respondents who mailed in their comments addressed the point.

168. Most of those commenting on the issue stated that they viewed the exposure draft as being somewhat conceptual in nature. Many of those thought that this was appropriate and supported the document and the conceptual material it presented. A few respondents were concerned about the ability to audit some of the standards because of the conceptual nature of the document. Several suggested that the final statement be segregated into concepts and standards and both be issued in one statement.
169. The Board decided that some parts of the final statement would contain information that should be presented as concepts while other parts would be better presented as standards. Therefore, the final statement should be a “hybrid” issuance containing both concepts and standards. The title of the document was changed to “Managerial Cost Accounting Concepts and Standards for the Federal Government.” (The Board decided that the material presented in the exposure draft as the first standard that addressed the relationship among managerial cost accounting, financial reporting, and budgeting should be presented as concepts. The other materials were more in the nature of standards.)

---

## Relationship Among Cost Accounting, Financial Reporting, And Budgeting

170. The Board considers it important for financial preparers and users of financial reports to understand the relationship of cost accounting to the more traditional areas of general financial accounting, financial reporting, and budgeting. It views cost accounting as a basic and integral part of an entity’s financial management system. Therefore, the Board included a standard on this relationship within the exposure draft.
171. The standard addressed the role of managerial cost accounting in financial management and explained how it provides cost information relevant to budgeting, financial reporting, management control, and many decision making processes. The standard discussed the use of a common data source for cost accounting, financial accounting, and budgeting. It explained how the costs may be determined using different bases of accounting and different recognition and measurement methods depending upon the intended use of the information. It also emphasized the need for reconciliation of cost data which may be presented differently in various financial reports. The standard stated that all cost information, regardless of how presented, should be traceable back to the original common data source.
172. Most exposure draft respondents who provided comments on this standard stated that the level of detail presented was about right given the desire of the Board to address cost accounting at a high level. Most respondents agreed with the need to draw cost accounting

---

data from a common data source that is also the source of financial and budgetary data. Some respondents were concerned that the use of the term “data source” was too closely allied with automated or computerized operations and that the term may be misinterpreted. The Board, however, believes that the term is adequately explained. In fact, the exposure draft clearly stated that this term was not meant to imply the use of computerized systems for source information.

173. Data reconciliation for reports containing cost information developed on different bases of accounting or using different recognition or measurement methods received overwhelming support from respondents to the exposure draft. They said that the ability to reconcile differing cost information is necessary to ensure data integrity, avoid confusion on the part of financial statement users, and support stewardship responsibilities.
174. Many who commented on whether the exposure draft should be viewed as a statement of concepts or a statement of standards implied that this particular standard on relationships of cost accounting to other financial management functions was basically conceptual in nature. The Board agreed and concluded that this section is more in the nature of an explanation of how cost accounting provides useful information and how it fits in with the overall financial management system as opposed to a standard which places a requirement on an entity. The Board decided that this material would be better presented in the final statement as recommended concepts.

---

## Requirement For Cost Accounting

175. The cost accounting task force recommended that a standard be included in the exposure draft requiring each reporting entity to establish cost accounting systems and procedures for its activities. They believed this was necessary to ensure the generation of required cost information.
176. The Board agreed to include the standard in the exposure draft. The standard defined “system” in a broad way as simply an organized grouping of methods and activities designed to consistently produce reliable cost information. The explanations and discussions section of the exposure draft contained information on several factors that would help managers decide how complex and sophisticated their cost accounting system should be. It noted that the system could be constrained by the (1) nature of the entity’s operations, (2) precision needed in cost information, (3) practicality of data collection and processing, (4) availability of electronic data handling, (5) expected cost of the system itself, and (6) any specific management information needs.
177. The exposure draft also listed ten minimum criteria that should be met by all managerial cost accounting systems. Four of these were related directly to the other standards in the

---

exposure draft (responsibility segments, full costing, costing methodology, and unused capacity costs). The six remaining criteria were concerned with ensuring that the cost data produced was reliable, consistent, and useful. These criteria were (1) ensuring the ability to assist in measurement of performance, (2) reporting information on a timely and consistent basis, (3) integrating cost accounting with the standard general ledger, (4) determining a reasonable and useful level of data precision, (5) accommodating special information needs of management, and (6) documenting the system through a manual or handbook. The standard also allowed for the use of cost finding techniques and special cost studies or analyses.

178. A large number of respondents to the exposure draft supported the requirement for cost accounting systems. They stated that such a requirement is necessary to ensure that appropriate cost data are recorded. They also said that having a requirement for cost systems will help agencies to more easily meet the requirements of the CFO Act and the GPRA. Some qualified their support by stating that the standard should allow an exemption for small entities since establishment of a full cost accounting system may not be cost-beneficial to them. The Board decided that such an exemption would be inappropriate since the standards should apply to all federal activities. Furthermore, it should be far easier for small entities to perform managerial cost accounting in most cases.
179. Those who were negative toward the standard provided several reasons. Several expressed concern about whether accounting standard-setting bodies should require or determine how accounting data are produced. They noted that other accounting standard-setting organizations have stated only what information is required and how that information is displayed in financial statements, not how the information is developed.
180. The Board believes that it should not be constrained by what other standard-setters do. Other standard-setters so far have concerned themselves mainly with entities' external reporting. This is understandable because their mission is to assure that the financial position and results of operations are presented in a fair, reliable, and consistent manner to financial statement users who are external to the reporting entity.
181. FASAB is different in that it has determined that some of the users of federal government financial reports are internal to the government. Given the nature and size of the federal government, internal users often do not have the same type of access to cost information that may be available in commercial enterprises. In addition, the Board views cost accounting information as vital to both internal and external users. The Board has previously determined in its *Objectives of Financial Reporting* that cost information should be reported to meet the needs of Congress, federal executives, and others.
182. Some respondents to the exposure draft were concerned that the requirement for a cost accounting system, along with the system criteria, would not allow management enough

---

flexibility. They seemed to consider the requirement for a system to mean that cost accounting activities had to be automated with computers and that software had to be developed and employed in a “full-blown” system, as one put it. They believe that such an elaborate system may not be needed in some cases where informal procedures or methods would suffice.

183. The Board does not intend to prescribe an elaborate managerial cost accounting system for every federal organization. It believed that the standard proposed in the ED was sufficiently broad to allow managerial flexibility in the system design. However, the Board does recognize that the term “system” may connote to some a requirement for computerization and sophisticated methodologies.
184. Others stated that establishing the requirement for cost systems should be the responsibility of OMB or JFMIP. Some of the respondents were concerned about the degree to which the standard may overlap with JFMIP’s responsibility to set requirements for cost accounting systems. The NPR recommends setting requirements for cost accounting systems as a responsibility of JFMIP, while asking the Board to provide the cost accounting standards.<sup>40</sup>
185. The Board proposed the requirement for systems to ensure that cost information is produced and reported in a reliable and consistent manner, and emphasized that this was the intent. The point is not whether the information is produced through the use of a system or through other techniques. The Board believes that, in many cases, cost accounting systems will be established as a natural consequence of requiring cost information. Many government agencies are very large and complex organizations, and it is unrealistic to think that they can develop cost data without relying on a system to do so. Other small agencies or reporting entities may not need a system to develop cost data in a regular, consistent, and reliable manner.
186. The Board, therefore, changed the standard to emphasize producing cost accounting information in a reliable and consistent manner. This can be done through the use of cost accounting systems or cost finding techniques. In either case, the main intent of the original standard is preserved. In addition, the concerns expressed over whether the Board or some other organization should establish the requirement for cost “systems” are solved.

---

<sup>40</sup>Office of the Vice President, Improving Financial Management, Accompanying Report of the National Performance Review (September 1993), page 24.

---

---

## Responsibility Segments

187. As stated in the ED, a responsibility segment is a component of a reporting entity that is responsible for carrying out a mission, conducting a major line of activity, or producing one or a group of related products or services.
188. The proposal for using responsibility segments in the ED was based on the view that most federal departments and agencies are engaged in more than one line of activity, or producing more than one type of service or product. Furthermore, the activities that an agency performs may differ from each other significantly in required resources and operations. The ED used the Department of Veterans Affairs (VA) as an example. Among its activities, VA administers hospitals and nursing homes to provide health care to veterans, and it also administers direct home loan and loan guarantee programs. These lines of activities are significantly different in operation patterns. The Board believes that for entities that are engaged in diverse activities, identifying responsibility segments is necessary for identifying resources consumed by a distinct line of activity with the outputs of that activity.
189. A majority of respondents supported the requirement for responsibility segments and agreed with the advantages of the requirement. They expressed the view that segmentation provides a basic framework to trace and assign costs to outputs. They also believed that segmentation provides management with the flexibility of choosing a costing methodology that is best suited for a line of activity. The respondents also stated that information generated by responsibility segments can be used to measure performance and to assess accountability.
190. Several respondents, however, presented arguments against using responsibility segments. One such argument was that responsibility segments would constitute an unnecessary layer that conflicts with financial reporting and budgeting systems. The Board disagrees with this view. A responsibility segment is not, and should not be, an additional layer to the organization and the budget structure. It is an accounting mechanism to capture data generated in operations by various components of an organization in its existing structure. Organization and budget structures can be changed for better management but not for the sake of accounting. Accounting may influence but cannot dictate such changes.
191. The Board believes that accounting by segment will help provide information useful to program managers and other users of financial reports. Entity-wide financial reports provide information on the overall financial position and operating results of an entity in aggregate. Such reports, although useful for many purposes, are not sufficient for cost management. A fundamental undertaking of managerial cost accounting is to match costs with activities and outputs. The purpose of segmentation is to segregate entity-wide data by major lines of activities and their outputs. Information related to each segment should tell managers and other users of financial reports about the segment's specific outputs, the activities performed, and resources consumed to produce the outputs.

---

192. Furthermore, segment-based reporting need not be in conflict with entity-wide financial reporting. They can use a common source of data, such as accounting data collected by the standard general ledger or the budget execution reports. To perform segment-based accounting and reporting, the general accounting or budget execution data can be traced and assigned to segments. The Statement of Federal Financial Accounting Concepts No. 2, *Entity and Display*, discusses a reporting approach similar to the segment-based accounting and reporting:

“With some organizations, and even suborganizations, the activities of one or more programs or other components are as important to the readers of financial statements as are activities of the entity as a whole. This would be particularly true for a department composed of many bureaus, administrations, agencies, services, etc., and particularly if their programs are dissimilar. In those instances, consideration should be given to the preferability of reporting the assets, liabilities, revenues, expenses, etc., of both the significant components individually and of the entity in its entirety.”<sup>41</sup>

193. Another argument against requiring responsibility segments was that the requirement is overly prescriptive and would constrain agency management from selecting among various cost collection methods. The Board believes the standard gives management adequate flexibility in structuring cost accounting. As the standard states, it is for the management of each entity to decide how segments should be defined, and how similar products and services can be grouped into one segment.

194. Furthermore, segments are the largest components of an entity. Management has the flexibility to use any cost collection method within each segment. Within a segment, management may define sub-units, functions, projects, business processes, activities, or a combination of them as cost centers to accumulate costs. The costs accumulated at lower levels can then be aggregated to the segment level.

195. In fact, a segment may contain multiple levels of responsibility or cost centers. For example, if veterans health care is defined as one of the DVA’s responsibility segments, this segment may define its hospitals, clinics, and nursing homes as responsibility centers. Each hospital, clinic, and nursing home may further define their functional units, activities, or business processes as cost centers.

196. Some respondents correctly pointed out that requiring broad responsibility segments, rather than prescribing traditional cost centers, provides opportunity for entities to use activity-based costing or any other costing methods that they may find appropriate.

197. Several respondents who supported the use of responsibility segments interpreted the wording of the proposed standard as requiring that each segment perform managerial cost

---

<sup>41</sup>FASAB Statement of Recommended Accounting Concepts 2, *Entity and Display*, par. 75.

---

accounting. They pointed out that for some entities, it is more effective and economical to perform centralized managerial cost accounting. Such centralized accounting is capable of accumulating costs by segments and assigning costs among them. The respondents requested that the wording be revised to provide this flexibility.

198. The Board agrees with this request. The Board believes that entity management should have the discretion to decide whether managerial cost accounting is performed at the entity or segment level, so long as the segment cost information is provided to managers and other users. Thus, the standard recommended in this statement does not require that responsibility segments perform managerial cost accounting.

---

## Full Cost

199. As stated in the ED, the full cost of an output produced by a responsibility segment is the sum of direct and indirect costs that contribute to the output, including the costs of supporting services provided by other segments and entities.
200. The outputs of a responsibility segment are considered as cost objects.<sup>42</sup> However, in most circumstances, the full costs of intermediate objects, such as activities, processes, projects, programs, or organization units, must also be measured in order to derive the full costs of their outputs. (See ED Par. 173) The full cost information related to outputs as well as those intermediate objects are useful in measuring efficiency and cost-effectiveness.

### Usefulness of full cost information

201. **Program evaluation and authorization.** Most respondents supported the full cost standard. They recognized that it is particularly important to determine and report the full cost of a program. Information on full costs of programs can be used in program evaluations. Such evaluations typically relate the full costs of programs to their outputs and outcomes. Decision-makers in the Congress and the federal government at all levels as well as the public should be provided with information on the full costs of programs and their outputs. The full cost information, when used with information on program outputs and outcomes, can aid the Congress and federal executives in making decisions on program authorization and modifications.

---

<sup>42</sup>“Cost object” is defined as an activity, output, or item whose cost is to be measured. In a broad sense, a cost object can be an organizational division, a function, task, product, service, or a customer. See Glossary.

- 
202. **Cost awareness.** Most respondents also agreed that the standard has the advantage of promoting cost awareness. Entity and segment managers should be aware of the costs that are incurred or assigned to their operations. Without the awareness, managing and controlling costs are impossible. The full cost information has not been available and will not likely to be without an accounting standard requiring it.
203. **Setting fees and prices for government goods and services.** Many respondents agreed that full cost should be considered as a primary basis for setting fees and reimbursements for government goods and services. As pointed out in the ED, it is a federal policy that, with certain exceptions, user charges (prices or fees) should be sufficient to recover the full cost of goods, services, and resources provided by the federal government as sovereign.<sup>43</sup> The policy further states that when the government sells goods and services under business-like conditions rather than in a sovereign capacity, user charges should be based on market prices and may yield a net revenue in excess of the full cost. The objectives of the policy are to: (1) ensure that government goods and services are provided on a self-sustaining basis, (2) promote efficient allocation of national resources, and (3) allow fair competition with comparable goods and services provided by the private sector.
204. To implement the policy, full cost information is necessary. Only with reliable full cost information can management ensure that user charges fully recover the costs.<sup>44</sup> Even in some exceptional cases in which user charges are exempted or restricted by law, agencies that provide the goods and services would nevertheless need the full cost information to assess the extent to which costs are not recovered.
205. **Making cost comparisons.** Respondents agreed that the full cost of outputs provides a valid basis for cost comparisons. One of them emphasized the importance of calculating the unit cost of output on the full cost basis. The Board agrees with his view. If an output can be measured in units, its unit cost should be calculated on the full cost basis.
206. The unit cost of a service or product, calculated on a full cost basis, can be compared with a similar service or product produced by other entities either in the federal government or in the private sector. The comparison would not be valid if it is not conducted on a full cost basis.

---

<sup>43</sup>OMB Circular No. A-25, User Charges.

<sup>44</sup>The standard of determining full cost discussed in this document, however, should not be construed as a standard for setting fees, prices, and reimbursements. Federal entities should comply with laws and regulations related to pricing policies in general and for specific types of goods and services. Those laws and regulations (including OMB Circular A-25) may prescribe costing requirements other than the full cost standard discussed in this document. Full cost defined by this standard can serve as a point of reference for managerial decisions. However, it is not intended to supersede any costing concept that management is required or permitted by law to use in pricing goods and services.

- 
207. One of the available cost management tools is trend analysis. In trend analysis, unit costs of a service or product over a number of consecutive periods are examined to find a trend of increases or decreases. This analysis can be valid only when the unit costs of all periods are measured on a consistent basis, such as the full cost basis. When the full cost basis is used, the analyst can further examine the components of the unit cost, such as direct labor and material costs, overhead costs, and costs of services received from other segments or entities. Through examining the various components of the full unit cost, program managers can pinpoint specific areas that contributed to cost increases or decreases.
208. If activity-based costing is used, the cost components would be associated with activities. The trend analysis for activity-based cost components can provide information related to the efficiency of the activities. Managers can also analyze the extent that the individual activities add value to program outputs and objectives.

#### Limitations of Full Cost Information

209. Several respondents cautioned the Board against “uncritical advocacy” of full costs. They pointed out that full cost is not relevant to all decision-making situations. They explained that some decisions require other cost concepts such as variable, differential, or incremental costs. Thus, some of them said that the Board should not singularly emphasize full cost.
210. The Board is aware of the notion that different cost concepts should be used for different purposes so that the use of a cost concept is relevant to a particular decision-making purpose. For this reason, the Board discussed the limitations and usefulness of full cost in the ED at length. (See ED pars 133 through 146.) Quoting from Anthony and Young, the ED pointed out that full costs are not appropriate for alternative choice decisions such as the decision to (1) add or drop a product or service, (2) perform work in-house or contract out for it, and (3) accept or reject a special request. For these decisions, the appropriate information is differential costs.<sup>45</sup>
211. However, the full cost standard is an accounting standard, rather than a cost analysis or decision-making standard. It requires that full cost information be compiled and reported through cost accounting. In no way does it limit cost analysts and decision-makers to the use of full cost alone in all situations. The Board believes that when the full cost information, instead of any portion of it, is made available, analysts and decision-makers will have a comprehensive data source to develop the cost concepts that they need in their analyses.

---

<sup>45</sup>Robert N. Anthony and David W. Young, *Management Control in Nonprofit Organizations*, 5th ed. (Burr Ridge, Illinois: Richard D. Irwin Co., 1994) page 235.

---

212. Some respondents pointed out that full cost requires a complex process of cost assignments and allocations. The Board believes that the assignment of indirect costs is a necessary procedure to obtain full cost. It can be performed through an appropriate costing methodology. As discussed in the costing methodology section of the ED, some modern costing methodologies are available to make rational and reliable cost assignments. However, the Board must caution that the full cost information, like any other accounting information, can only be as good as how it is prepared. For example, it can be unreliable or inaccurate, if arbitrary or irrational cost allocations are used excessively. Thus, the Board recommended a costing methodology standard. Program managers should critically review costing methodologies and techniques used to derive the cost information.

### Inclusion or Exclusion of Certain Costs

213. A number of respondents were opposed to the inclusion of accrued employee benefit costs and costs of services provided by other entities that are not reimbursed. (The subject of inter-entity costs will be discussed in the next section.) They argued that these costs are not funded with their budgetary resources and are beyond their control. A large portion of employee benefit costs, including accrued retirement benefit costs, are funded through appropriations to trust funds managed by OPM and DoD. The Board believes that as a principle, full cost should include the costs of all resources applied to a program, activity, and its outputs, regardless of funding sources. For financial reporting, the Board has stated its position that the full costs of employee pension and other retirement benefits determined on an actuarial basis, including the amounts that are funded to the trust funds directly, should be recognized as an expense in the employer entity's financial reports.<sup>46</sup> The Board does not find a good rationale to depart from this principle in managerial costing.

214. The ED states that some costs should be recognized as a period expense rather than the costs of goods and services (output costs). Examples include the costs of "other post employment benefits" (OPEB), reorganization costs, and acquisition costs of Federal "mission" and "heritage" property, plant, and equipment which are recognized as expenses at the time of acquisition.<sup>47</sup> These costs will be recognized as expenses for the period in which the related events take place, and are referred to as "period expenses." The ED explained that since these expenses do not contribute to the outputs of the period in which they are incurred, they should not be included in the output costs.

---

<sup>46</sup>FASAB Exposure Draft, Accounting for Liabilities of the Federal Government (Nov. 1994), pars. 80-99, pages 32-46.

<sup>47</sup>"Federal mission PP&E" and "heritage assets" are explained in FASAB Exposure Draft, Accounting for Property, Plant, and Equipment (February 28, 1995), pars. 98-115, pages 29-33.

- 
215. The OPEB costs, for example, may be recognized as expenses for a period in which a reduction in force or an employee injury takes place.<sup>48</sup> It is not appropriate to attribute the entire OPEB costs to the output costs of that period. Several respondents expressed the view that OPEB costs should be included in full cost. There is no doubt that OPEB costs, as well as other period expenses, are part of the full cost of an entity or a program. They may also be part of the full costs of outputs over many years in which the employees contributed to the production of the outputs. However, they are not the production costs for the period during which they are incurred. Thus, the Board concluded that in cost studies, management may distribute some of the period expenses, such as OPEB costs, to outputs over a number of past periods if (a) experience shows that the OPEB costs are recurring in a regular pattern, and (b) a nexus can be established between the OPEB costs and the outputs produced in those past periods. The Board finds no reason to change this position.
216. Some respondents contended that full cost should include unused capacity costs. As will be explained in a later section on unused capacity costs, the Board has decided not to recommend a standard on measuring unused capacity costs. Thus, to assure valid cost comparisons, full costs should not exclude unused capacity costs.

### Controllable and Uncontrollable Costs

217. Some respondents believed that the managers of a responsibility segment should be held accountable only for costs that they can control, and their performance should not be evaluated for costs beyond their control. They found that the full cost reporting would obscure the distinction between controllable and uncontrollable costs. For performance measurement or other purposes, some entities may want to make a distinction between controllable and uncontrollable costs with respect to an individual responsibility segment or a cost center. The full cost information need not interfere with this distinction. This standard does not require the use of full cost for internal reports. If some entities choose full cost for internal reporting, the internal reports can provide a distinction between controllable and uncontrollable costs with respect to individual segments.
218. Ultimately, most costs are controllable at a certain level of the entity. If some of them are not controllable at a lower level of the organization, they may very well be controllable at a higher level. Each segment should concern itself with the costs that are assigned to it on a cause-and-effect basis. These costs are often incurred because of a segment's demand and use of services from other segments or entities. Although the service-receiving segment has no control over the efficiency in producing the service, it can influence the costs by changing the demand for the service. For an entity's top management, full cost reporting provides it

---

<sup>48</sup>FASAB Exposure Draft, Accounting for Liabilities of the Federal Government (Nov. 7, 1994), pars. 100-102, pages 47-48.

---

with an overview of how the entity's various costs, including the general and administrative costs, are incurred and assigned to the entity's segments. The full cost reporting also makes the entity's top management aware of the costs of services that it receives from other entities. The management can closely review those costs and determine whether actions are needed to control them.

### Centralized Accounting

219. The proposed standard in the ED states that "Responsibility segments should be capable of measuring the full costs of their outputs." Several respondents stated that the full costs of segments, programs, and their outputs can be more effectively measured by entities through centralized accounting, rather than by individual segments. They further stated that it would not be cost-beneficial for segments to measure and report the full costs of their activities and outputs on a regular basis (such as monthly basis). The Board agrees that many entities may find it more economical and effective to measure full costs through centralized accounting. Moreover, the Board believes that it should be for entity management to decide as to how frequently the full cost information should be made available in its internal reports. Thus, the wording of the standard has been changed. The full cost requirement is now limited to external reporting via general purpose financial reports.

### Costs of Outcomes

220. A respondent suggested that in addition to the full cost of outputs, the standard should also require reporting the full cost of program outcomes. As discussed in the ED, the Board believes that performance measurement of a program requires three major elements: the full cost of the program, its outputs, and its outcomes. (See ED pars 37 and 38) The full cost of a program and its outputs, once measured according to this standard can be related to the outcome of the program to measure its cost effectiveness.

221. This standard does not require a direct measurement of the cost of outcomes because in most instances, program outcomes need to be measured with methodologies beyond those discussed in this document. GPRA defined "outcome measure" as an "assessment of the results of a program activity compared to its intended purpose."<sup>49</sup> Many programs' policy objectives and intended results are socio-economic or scientific in nature, or involve national defense. The assessment of the program results require expert knowledge in those areas. Thus, unlike costs and outputs, outcomes are not always measured in quantitative or monetary terms.

---

<sup>49</sup>The Government Performance and Results Act of 1993, PL 103-62, sec 4.

- 
222. Moreover, unlike costs and outputs that are measured for each accounting and reporting period, such as a quarter or a year, outcome measurement may be long-term in nature. For example, the Senate Report on GPRA states that “Outcome measurement cannot be done until a program or project reaches a point of maturity (usually at least several years of full operation for programs continuing indefinitely) or at completion.” Although all programs cost money, some of them may produce positive results, while others may produce no results or negative results.
223. Because of the complexities in measuring outcomes, the costing principles and methodologies discussed in this document cannot be used to measure the cost of outcomes. The Board believes that the full cost of a program and its outcome should be measured independently, using methodologies appropriate to costs and to outcomes. Once each of them is measured, they can then be related to review the cost-effectiveness of the program.

---

## Inter-entity Costs

224. It is not unusual in the federal government for one agency to provide goods or services to another agency. Sometimes this may be required by law, and often it is a very efficient method of conducting business for the agencies involved and for the government as a whole. In many cases, the agency receiving such goods or services will reimburse the providing agency in accordance with some agreed-upon price. Often, however, there is no charge, or there is a charge that is not sufficient to cover the providing agency’s full cost. When such “free” or lower-than-cost items are used in the production of the receiving agency’s outputs, the result can be an understatement of the full cost of final outputs by the receiving agency.

## Survey of Non-Reimbursed Costs

225. The Board recognized that these non-reimbursed or under-reimbursed goods and services could distort the determination of a reporting entity’s full cost of outputs, but it was uncertain of the extent to which this occurs. To identify examples of non-reimbursed inter-entity costs, the Board conducted a limited survey of federal agencies. Of the 22 agencies responding to the survey request, 13 indicated that they provide some type of service or good that is not reimbursed. These covered a wide range of activities, but most of the costs involved were for salaries and salary-related benefits of those employees performing the work. In most cases, the costs were funded through direct appropriations to the providing agencies; however, those agencies could not specifically identify the total amounts involved. Several provided estimates, which ranged from \$360 thousand dollars per year to about \$180 million per year. Several examples of non-reimbursed inter-entity activities identified in the survey are listed below by providing entity:

- 
- Department of Agriculture – Provides market data, pesticide data, food specification information, water supply forecasts, and other agricultural information. Thirty-six federal agencies regularly receive all or some of this information.
  - Department of Commerce – Provides accounting and grant administration services, computer access and reports, and consultation services to several agencies.
  - Department of State – Provides space and facilities for other agencies in its buildings in the U.S. and overseas.
  - General Services Administration – In some cases, it provides policy and regulatory development services, property management services, and contract award and administration to other agencies without reimbursement.
  - National Science Foundation – Administers a research grant program on engineering and computer science for the Department of Defense.

226. The Board noted that the survey was restricted to non-reimbursed costs between different agencies. As such, the results did not necessarily represent all of the kinds and amounts of transactions and costs between different reporting entities. The survey was also limited to those non-reimbursed costs which the agencies could easily identify in order to respond quickly to the questionnaire. Nevertheless, there were indications that some non-reimbursed costs may be significant in amount.

### Usefulness of Recognition

227. Some respondents to the exposure draft stated that recognition of inter-entity<sup>50</sup> costs would have limited usefulness for managers since they cannot control the cost of items provided by other agencies. In some circumstances, they cannot control the amounts of inter-entity goods or services that must be used in the production of their outputs.

228. The Board realizes that recognition of non-reimbursed or under-reimbursed inter-entity costs will not always have the same degree of usefulness for all levels of management. However, as stated in the standard on full costs, to fully account for the costs of the goods and services they produce, reporting entities will need to include the cost of goods and services received from other entities. Cost reduction and control, performance evaluation, and process

---

<sup>50</sup>Full cost, as discussed in the full cost standard, contemplates both intra-entity costs and inter-entity costs applicable to a responsibility segment. This standard elaborates on inter-entity costs. Intra-entity costing is accomplished through the costing methodology selected for use within the reporting entity since these costs are passed among responsibility segments.

---

improvement depend on knowledge of the full costs of producing outputs, including production costs incurred by other federal entities. These costs are most important for use by the entity's top-level management (and to a lesser degree by line managers) in controlling and assessing the operating environment and in making decisions about how best to acquire those goods and services. Knowledge of full cost, including the extent of inter-entity costs, is also important to external users, especially the Congress and taxpayers, in making decisions concerning various programs and allocating resources throughout the government.

229. In addition, the Board believes that, without the recognition of non-reimbursed and under-reimbursed inter-entity costs, the receiving entity has little incentive to control the use of these resources. While they may appear to be "free" to the receiving entity, the costs are absorbed somewhere in the government. If the receiving entity were charged for these costs, top-level management would then have more incentive to economize and control the use of these resources as well as make better decisions concerning how and where to acquire them. This would help reduce overall costs to the taxpayer and provide the other benefits associated with full-costing by responsibility segment.
230. The recognition of all inter-entity costs is also important when an entity produces goods or services that are sold outside of the federal government. For the entity to recover the government's full cost on the sale, knowledge of the total cost, including costs incurred by other federal entities, is vital to the establishment of an appropriate price.

### The Use of Estimates

231. The standard places the responsibility on the providing entity to supply the receiving entity with information on the full costs of non-reimbursed or under-reimbursed inter-entity goods and services. This is appropriate since only the providing entity is likely to have such information. Implementation of the standard on full costing should make this requirement fairly easy for the providing entity to fulfill. If, for some reason, the providing entity cannot or does not supply the cost information, the receiving entity has no way to recognize the costs other than through estimation.
232. The Board anticipated this possibility, and requires the receiving entity to use an estimate of the cost of those goods and services if the actual cost information is not provided. The estimate must be reasonable and should be aimed at determining realistic costs incurred by the providing entity. However, if such a cost estimate cannot be made, the receiving entity may base the estimate on the market value of the goods or services.
233. Some respondents to the exposure draft stated that the use of estimates would be too problematic and unreliable and that the receiving entity would not have enough information to make the estimate. Some were concerned that the use of estimates would cause arguments between reporting entities over the cost. Others were concerned that some

---

entities do not have experienced personnel to make such estimates. A few were concerned about the audit implications of using an estimate.

234. Some respondents expressed concern over the possible use of market values in making the estimate. Some of these respondents stated that government-type goods and services are not often produced outside government and, therefore, such market values may not exist. Others stated that market value does not always bear a direct relationship to true cost or that market values change too rapidly to be of any use.
235. The Board realizes the problems associated with the use of estimates. However, implementation of the other managerial cost accounting standards in this statement by the providing entities should considerably lessen the need for receiving entities to make estimates of inter-entity costs. The Board also believes that, if the inter-entity costs meet the recognition criteria established by the standard, and cost information is not received, then use of a reasonable estimate of cost is preferable to no recognition at all.
236. Estimates are often used in accounting and financial reporting. The recognition of cost based on estimation is not new and can be reliable so long as the estimate is reasonable and based on a rational and systematic method. The Board also realizes that the use of estimation necessarily implies the use of professional judgement. This does not negate the value of the estimate to users of the financial information and should not present a problem in relation to audit requirements.
237. The Board realizes that market values may not always be available for many kinds of inter-entity goods and services. Nevertheless, if such values are available, they can be a good basis for estimating cost if no other basis can be established. Although market values may not be directly related to costs of production and they may fluctuate, they may also be viewed as a fairly reliable guide to the costs an entity might have to incur to obtain inter-entity goods and services from a non-governmental source. As with the determination of all estimates, use of market values as an estimation basis requires the use of judgement and professional care.
238. The Board also realizes that there may be some implementation problems such as disagreements with providing entities over an estimated cost or with the lack of trained personnel to make estimates. These problems are of a practical nature and can be resolved by management. In that regard, they are not unlike other problems faced when implementing any new or changed accounting standard such as making changes to systems and methods and training personnel on the new requirements. Both providing and receiving entities should work closely with each other to resolve any costing problems just as they would to solve any non-accounting related situations.

---

## Recognition Criteria

239. It is clear to the Board that the recognition of each and every non-reimbursed or under-reimbursed inter-entity cost is not possible. The federal government is a very large and complex entity and it is normal to expect some flow of goods and services between its activities as a natural and reasonable method of completing missions and objectives. The Board decided that only certain non-reimbursed or under-reimbursed inter-entity costs should be addressed. The standard, therefore, includes criteria for recognition which will limit the application of the standard to only those items deemed most significant and important.
240. The criteria address the materiality of the non-reimbursed inter-entity cost, whether it is a part of broad and general support for all entities, and whether it is needed to help determine a price to non-governmental entities. The materiality criterion considers materiality in the context of the importance of the item to the receiving entity. Under this criterion, whether an item of inter-entity cost is recognized depends upon three points. The first of these is significance to the receiving entity, i.e. whether the item is important enough that management should be aware of its cost in decision making circumstances. The second is the degree to which the goods or services are an integral and necessary part of the receiving entity's output. The third is the degree to which the good or service can be matched to the specific receiving entity with reasonable precision.
241. The criterion of broad and general support recognizes that some entities provide support to all or most other federal entities, generally as a matter of their mission. The costs of broad and general services should not be recognized by the receiving entity when no reimbursement has been made. However, if the service is an integral and necessary part of the receiving entity's operations and outputs, those costs should be recognized.
242. The criteria also recognize that there are certain cases in which inter-entity costs need to be recognized because there could be an effect upon a resulting price to a non-governmental entity. If a federal entity sells outputs to a non-federal entity, it is usually required to recover the full cost of those goods or services. While cost is not the sole determinant of final price, knowledge of the actual full cost of production to the government as a whole is necessary to ensure that the price is appropriately established at a level that will recover all costs.
243. Most of the respondents to the exposure draft agreed with the recognition criteria. However, a few were concerned about how the criteria might be interpreted and whether the standards were too general in nature. The Board realizes that considerable judgement is required to apply these criteria and notes that the specific facts and circumstances in each case must be considered. This concern, along with other implementation concerns, led the Board to make certain decisions about implementation discussed below under "Implementation Issues."

---

## Consolidation

244. The standard requires that, when non-reimbursed or under-reimbursed inter-entity costs are recognized, the receiving entity should recognize the full costs of the goods or services received as an expense (or asset) and, to the extent that reimbursement is less than full cost, the difference is to be recognized as a financing source. At the same time, of course, the providing entity would continue to recognize the full costs of goods and services provided, and any off-setting reimbursements, in its accounting records. Several respondents to the exposure draft were concerned about the possibility of “double-counting” of costs and others raised concerns about the ability to eliminate these transactions in consolidations.
245. Both the providing entity and the receiving entity are separate reporting entities. Each should recognize in its accounting records and financial reports the true costs of operations and any revenues received. The providing entity incurs a cost in providing the goods or services even though they are sent to another entity. It may also receive a partial payment or reimbursement. These transactions and events should be reflected in its accounting. The receiving entity, as a separate reporting entity, should also recognize its total cost of production. The full cost of non-reimbursed or under-reimbursed goods or services ultimately contributing to its outputs should be reflected in the costs of production. To the extent that reimbursement is not made for those costs, the receiving entity is utilizing a separate source of financing, namely the providing entity. Again, this fact is reflected in the accounting. The result is that costs recognized but not actually paid are off-set by the imputed financing source. While the entity’s financial position is not affected, the real costs of production are reflected.
246. The only possibility for “double-counting” of costs occurs when consolidated financial reports are prepared for a reporting entity that includes both the providing entity and the receiving entity. In preparing such statements, the standard calls for elimination of the inter-entity transactions. In effect, this is no different from the elimination of transactions for which full reimbursement has been made. The only additional transaction to be eliminated is the recognition of the imputed financing source by the receiving entity. The recognition of costs by both the providing entity and the receiving entity and any actual reimbursements would be eliminated anyway if payment for the inter-entity costs were made.
247. The Board realizes that identification and tracking of transactions that must be eliminated for consolidated reports can become complex and difficult. However, this is a practical implementation problem that management should be able to overcome through the use of transaction coding or some other identification method. It likely will require changes in methods and systems currently in use and may require additional training of personnel. The Board has decided upon a method to ease implementation problems as discussed below.

---

## Implementation Issues

248. As discussed above, the Board realizes that there may be problems in implementing the standard on inter-entity costing. Recognition of non-reimbursed or under-reimbursed inter-entity costs is a new concept to federal entities and involves a new way of thinking about costs. There is concern that application of the standard may be inconsistent among federal entities. In addition, there could be problems, particularly at first, in developing estimates of costs; in revising accounting systems and procedures to accommodate these requirements; and in training personnel to accomplish the task. Furthermore, the Board recognizes the concern that some have about the elimination of inter-entity cost transactions for consolidated reporting since the accounting procedures may be complicated.
249. As a result of these problems and concerns, the Board has expressed the need to take a measured, step-by-step, practical approach to implementation of this standard. Therefore, the Board has decided that, in implementing the standard, it recommends that OMB, with assistance from the FASAB staff, should identify the specific inter-entity costs for entities to begin recognizing and OMB should then issue guidance identifying those costs. OMB should consider the requirements of the standard including the recognition criteria in developing the guidance and it should also consider suggestions and information provided by Treasury, GAO, and other agencies. The Board anticipates the largest and most important inter-entity costs will be identified first, followed by others as entities gain experience in the application of the standard. This approach is seen as a practical way to ensure uniformity in the application and implementation of the standard and to provide time and experience in overcoming any other practical problems which may arise. Also, the Board may recommend specific inter-entity costs for recognition in possible future recommended standards.

---

## Costing Methodology

250. The ED discussed cost accumulation and assignment principles. The ED states that costs should be accumulated by responsibility segments, and the accumulated costs should be classified by type of resource such as costs of employees, material, capital, utilities, rent, etc. The ED states that “The accumulation of costs by responsibility segments does not mean that each responsibility segment must have its own accounting system. The reporting entity may have a centralized accounting system, but the system should be capable of identifying costs with responsibility segments.” (See ED par. 170)
251. The ED discussed three cost assignment principles: (a) directly tracing costs wherever feasible and economically practical, (b) assigning costs on a cause-and-effect basis, or (c) allocating costs on a reasonable and consistent basis. These principles apply to costs of services provided by a segment to other segments, as well as assigning costs to ultimate outputs of a segment.

- 
252. The ED then provided brief descriptions of available costing methodologies: activity-base costing (ABC), job order costing, process costing, and standard costing. The ED pointed out that these costing methodologies are not mutually exclusive. For example, standard costing can be used within ABC. ABC and standard costing combined can then be used with either job order costing or process costing.
253. Most respondents believed that the requirement for cost accumulation by responsibility segment is appropriate. Some of them stated that costs are accumulated at levels lower than segments such as cost centers, processes, or activities within a segment. Such accumulation is consistent with the standard so long as the costs will be aggregated at the segment level. Some of the respondents stated that the requirement is currently feasible because their systems are designed to accumulate expenses by segments and by resource types. Others, however, stated that they must upgrade their general accounting systems in order to meet the standard requirement.
254. All the respondents agreed with the cost assignment principles. One respondent, while supporting the principles, stated that the principles should be explicitly ranked by preference. The Board intended to express an preference among the principles. It stated in the proposed standard that direct cost tracing should be used “wherever it is feasible and economically practical.” The Board further stated in the ED that “for the costs that are not directly traced to outputs, it is preferable that they be assigned to them on a cause-and-effect basis.” (See ED par. 182) However, for cost-benefit considerations, assigning costs by allocations cannot be avoided. The Board emphasized that cost allocations should be performed on a rational basis. It also cautioned that allocations can be arbitrary and thus may result in distortions. (See ED par. 190) To make the intent of preference more explicit, the Board has added words to the standard to indicate that the principles are listed by preference.
255. All the respondents approved the descriptions of available costing methodologies. Some of them stated that the materials included are clear and provide adequate guidance. The respondents agreed with the Board’s position that because federal activities are highly diverse, it is not practical to require a particular costing method for a particular type of activity at this time. However, it is appropriate to require that each entity select a costing methodology that is best suited to its operations and use that methodology consistently.
256. The Board encouraged government entities to study the potential use of ABC in their operations (ED par. 200). This was well received by the respondents. Eighteen respondents supported ABC. Most of them said that ABC can be effective when combined with any of the other costing methodologies. Seven respondents from federal agencies stated that they believed ABC is appropriate for their activities and were considering using it. In addition, two respondents stated that the use of standard costing should also be encouraged. The Board continues to believe that as federal agencies are going through stages in the

---

development of their managerial costing, more sophisticated and refined costing methods, such as ABC and standard costing, should be considered and used to minimize arbitrary cost allocations and to improve full cost information.

257. The Board considered whether the costing methodology section should be recommended as a concept or a standard. It concluded that it should be a standard. The Board believes that cost accumulation and assignment principles contained in this section are definitive and should be followed by federal entities. Only by adhering to the principles and by continuous refinement of costing methodologies, can reliable full cost information be achieved.

---

## Unused Capacity Costs

258. The ED proposed a standard, which, if adopted, would have required that entities measure the cost of unused operating capacity and report it as a separate expense. For this purpose, some entities, such as DoD, must separate operating capacity from “readiness capacities” which are reserved for war and emergency mobilization rather than normal operations. The operating capacity can be measured in terms of “practical capacity” which is the maximum units of output that the available capacity can produce taking the normal stoppage and interruptions into consideration. Unused capacity is the excess of practical capacity over actual outputs.
259. A number of respondents appreciated the importance of the proposed requirement. They stated that capacity cost information would be very useful in improving the cost and capacity management of federal agencies. Several respondents from the private sector urged that the proposal be adopted immediately.
260. Most respondents from federal agencies, however, stated that capacity measurements involve very complex issues and are not feasible to implement at this time. If the proposed requirement were adopted, agencies would encounter two major types of difficulties. First, they lack guidance on defining and measuring various types of capacity. For example, respondents from DoD stated that it is difficult to develop criteria that can be used to differentiate defense operating capacity costs from mobilization capacity costs. Civilian agencies engaging in administrative, policy making, and regulatory activities also indicated difficulties in defining their practical capacities. Second, respondents of many agencies stated that they do not have the accounting capability to provide reliable capacity measures. Without such capability, unused capacity costs could be improperly estimated and the resulting information could be misleading.
261. Many respondents were also opposed to the proposed standard on the basis of cost-benefit considerations. They estimated that accounting for capacity costs would require substantial time and efforts to implement. This would require the use of their limited accounting

---

personnel and equipment. Respondents from some agencies do not perceive that they have an over-capacity problem. Thus, it is very uncertain whether capacity accounting results, if produced, could be used to improve their operations.

262. After considering the responses to the ED, the Board is convinced that it is premature to recommend capacity accounting either as a standard or as a concept. The Board is aware that federal agencies have limited personnel and other resources for accounting. They must devote those limited resources to improving general financial reporting and to establishing the more fundamental elements of managerial cost accounting. Thus, it would not be cost beneficial to implement capacity costing at this time.
263. Managing capacity costs is a part of cost management. Although this document does not recommend a standard for measuring capacity costs, the full cost information required by the full cost standard will help management in identifying capacity utilization problems. Some respondents stated that the capacity accounting concepts would be useful to capital intensive, industrial-type activities and activities that deliver repetitive services that are measurable in units. The Board is aware that there are on-going research efforts on the subject in the private accounting communities. Thus, the Board may reconsider capacity accounting in the future.

---

## Effective Date

264. The Board holds the view that managerial cost accounting has been needed across the federal government for a long time. Since the standards are quite general and address only the highest levels of cost accounting, the Board felt that they should be implemented quickly. The earlier managerial cost accounting is started, the earlier the benefits will be seen in managing and controlling federal programs and activities. The Board also believes that an effective date far into the future would not serve to quickly change the government's tendency to neglect cost accounting. Therefore, in the exposure draft, the effective date was set for fiscal periods beginning after September 30, 1995 (i.e., beginning in fiscal year 1996).
265. A majority of respondents to the exposure draft commented that this date was too early and said that they foresee problems with implementation at September 30, 1995. Many reasons were given for a delay in implementation. Chief among these were (1) difficulty in obtaining funding to make necessary changes in financial systems before September 30, 1995, (2) a lack of trained accounting personnel and equipment, and (3) a need for time to develop or modify appropriate cost accounting methodologies and systems and develop management awareness and support. Respondents suggested implementation dates ranging from one to five years after the fiscal year 1996 date given in the exposure draft.

- 
266. The Board recognized the validity of the concerns of many respondents over funding, training, and development of costing activities. However, it also recognized that federal agencies must be able to develop cost information very soon to meet the requirements of the GPRA. It also noted that reporting entities do not have to possess sophisticated cost accounting systems to meet the requirements in these standards. Federal agencies can take a gradual approach to the development of cost systems, if necessary, while developing basic cost information through other means in the short term.
267. Nevertheless, the Board agreed that the implementation date in the exposure draft may be a problem for many federal agencies since cost accounting is relatively new to most of them and the recommended implementation date is very near. The Board decided, therefore, to delay the implementation date by one additional year and make the standards effective for periods beginning after September 30, 1996, with earlier implementation encouraged.

---

## Glossary

268. Early on in the development of the managerial cost accounting project, the task force determined that many problems can result in cost accounting from the use of similar terms to mean different things. It concluded that the use of consistent cost accounting terminology is necessary to avoid confusion and mis-communication. Therefore, it recommended that the Board attach a glossary to the exposure draft which would define many of the cost accounting terms used.
269. The Board agreed with this recommendation. It also decided that the establishment of uniform cost accounting terminology within the federal government is so important that the glossary should contain not only definitions for terms used in the statement, but also definitions for other important cost accounting terms even if those terms are not used directly in the text of the statement. This glossary would serve as the beginning of a uniform and consistent cost accounting terminology for use within the federal government.
270. Comments were received from only one respondent to the exposure draft concerning the glossary. That respondent did not suggest changing any of the definitions provided in the glossary, but only suggested some additions. The Board decided that the glossary is sufficient for the time being and should be retained in the final statement as an appendix. However, it also decided that it may issue additions to the glossary at a later date as more federal agencies gain experience in the development of cost information, and as the need for additional standard definitions becomes apparent.

---

---

**Appendix B: Glossary**

See Consolidated Glossary in “Appendix E: Consolidated Glossary.”